

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
11 March 2010 (11.03.2010)

(10) International Publication Number  
WO 2010/026214 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:

C07D 487/04 (2006.01) A61P 25/00 (2006.01)  
A61K 31/519 (2006.01) A61P 3/00 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/EP2009/061455

(22) International Filing Date:

4 September 2009 (04.09.2009)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

08163879.3 8 September 2008 (08.09.2008) EP  
09167675.9 12 August 2009 (12.08.2009) EP

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):

BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM INTERNATIONAL GMBH [DE/DE]; Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): FUCHS, Klaus [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). DORNER-CIOSSEK, Cornelia [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). EICKMEIER, Christian [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). FIEGEN, Dennis [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim

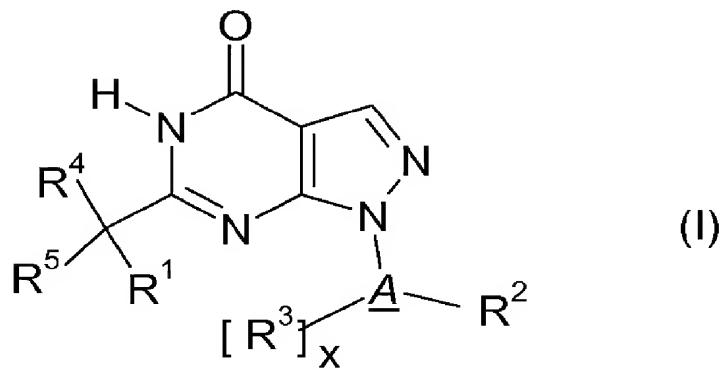
GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). FOX, Thomas [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). GIOVANNINI, Riccardo [IT/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). HEINE, Niklas [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). HENDRIX, Martin [DE/US]; Bayer Health-Care Pharmaceuticals, 340 Changebridge Road, Pine Brook, New Jersey 07058-9714 (US). ROSENBROCK, Holger [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE). SCHAENZLE, Gerhard [DE/DE]; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH, CD Patents, Binger Straße 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE).

(74) Agents: HAMMANN, Heinz et al.; Binger Str. 173, 55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: PYRAZOLOPYRIMIDINES AND THEIR USE FOR THE TREATMENT OF CNS DISORDERS



(57) **Abstract:** The invention relates to novel cycloalkyl- or cycloalkenyl-substituted pyrazolopyrimidinones of formula (I), wherein  $\Delta$  is selected from the group A<sup>1</sup> consisting of a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group or a C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptanyl and cyclooctanyl; and the members of the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl. The new compounds shall be used for the manufacture of medicaments, in particular medicaments for improving perception, concentration, learning and/or memory in patients in need thereof. Chemically, the compounds are characterised as pyrazolopyrimidinones with a cycloalkyl-moiety directly bound to the 1 position of the pyrazolopyrimidinone and a second substituent in the 6 position which is bound via an optionally substituted methylene-bridge. Further aspects of the present invention refer to a process for the manufacture of the compounds and their use for producing medicaments.

WO 2010/026214 A1



(84) **Designated States** (*unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available*): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Published:**

- *with international search report (Art. 21(3))*
- *before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments (Rule 48.2(h))*

## PYRAZOLOPYRIMIDINES AND THEIR USE FOR THE TREATMENT OF CNS DISORDERS

The invention relates to novel cycloalkyl- or cycloalkenyl-substituted pyrazolopyrimidinones. The new compounds shall be used for the manufacture of 5 medicaments, in particular medicaments for improving perception, concentration, learning and/or memory in patients in need thereof, for example patients suffering from Alzheimer's disease.

Chemically, the compounds are characterised as pyrazolopyrimidinones with a 10 cycloalkyl-moiety directly bound to the 1 position of the pyrazolopyrimidinone and a second substituent in the 6 position which is bound via an optionally substituted methylene-bridge. Further aspects of the present invention refer to a process for the manufacture of the compounds and their use as / for producing medicaments.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

15 The inhibition of phosphodiesterase 9A (PDE9A) is one of the current concepts to find new access paths to the treatment of cognitive impairments due to CNS disorders like Alzheimer's Disease or due to any other neurodegenerative process of the brain. With the present invention, new compounds are presented that follow this concept.

20 Phosphodiesterase 9A is one member of the wide family of phosphodiesterases. These kinds of enzymes modulate the levels of the cyclic nucleotides 5'-3' cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and 5'-3' cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). These cyclic nucleotides (cAMP and cGMP) are important second messengers and therefore play a central role in cellular signal transduction cascades.

25 Each of them reactivates inter alia, but not exclusively, protein kinases. The protein kinase activated by cAMP is called protein kinase A (PKA), and the protein kinase activated by cGMP is called protein kinase G (PKG). Activated PKA and PKG are able in turn to phosphorylate a number of cellular effector proteins (e.g. ion channels, G-protein-coupled receptors, structural proteins, transcription factors). It is possible in 30 this way for the second messengers cAMP and cGMP to control a wide variety of

physiological processes in a wide variety of organs. However, the cyclic nucleotides are also able to act directly on effector molecules. Thus, it is known, for example, that cGMP is able to act directly on ion channels and thus is able to influence the cellular ion concentration (review in: Wei *et al.*, *Prog. Neurobiol.*, **1998**, 56, 37-64). The

5 phosphodiesterases (PDE) are a control mechanism for controlling the activity of cAMP and cGMP and thus in turn for the corresponding physiological processes. PDEs hydrolyse the cyclic monophosphates to the inactive monophosphates AMP and GMP. Currently, 11 PDE families have been defined on the basis of the sequence homology of the corresponding genes. Individual PDE genes within a 10 family are differentiated by letters (e.g. PDE1A and PDE1B). If different splice variants within a gene also occur, this is then indicated by an additional numbering after the letters (e.g. PDE1A1).

Human PDE9A was cloned and sequenced in 1998. The amino acid identity with 15 other PDEs does not exceed 34% (PDE8A) and is never less than 28% (PDE5A). With a Michaelis-Menten constant ( $K_m$ ) of 170 nanomolar (nM), PDE9A has high affinity for cGMP. In addition, PDE9A is selective for cGMP ( $K_m$  for cAMP=230 micromolar ( $\mu$ M)). PDE9A has no cGMP binding domain, suggesting that the enzyme activity is not regulated by cGMP. It was shown in a Western blot analysis that

20 PDE9A is expressed in humans *inter alia* in testes, brain, small intestine, skeletal muscle, heart, lung, thymus and spleen. The highest expression was found in the brain, small intestine, kidney, prostate, colon, and spleen (Fisher *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1998**, 273 (25), 15559-15564; Wang *et al.*, *Gene*, **2003**, 314, 15-27). The gene for human PDE9A is located on chromosome 21q22.3 and comprises 21 25 exons. 4 alternative splice variants of PDE9A have been identified (Guipponi *et al.*, *Hum. Genet.*, **1998**, 103, 386-392). Classical PDE inhibitors do not inhibit human PDE9A. Thus, IBMX, dipyridamole, SKF94120, rolipram and vinpocetine show no inhibition on the isolated enzyme in concentrations of up to 100 micromolar ( $\mu$ M). An 30 IC<sub>50</sub> of 35 micromolar ( $\mu$ M) has been demonstrated for zaprinast (Fisher *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1998**, 273 (25), 15559-15564).

Murine PDE9A was cloned and sequenced in 1998 by Soderling *et al.* (*J. Biol. Chem.*, **1998**, 273 (19), 15553-15558). This has, like the human form, high affinity for

cGMP with a Km of 70 nanomolar (nM). Particularly high expression was found in the mouse kidney, brain, lung and liver. Murine PDE9A is not inhibited by IBMX in concentrations below 200 micromolar either; the IC50 for zaprinast is 29 micromolar (Soderling *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1998**, 273 (19), 15553-15558). It has been found

5 that PDE9A is strongly expressed in some regions of the rat brain. These include olfactory bulb, hippocampus, cortex, basal ganglia and basal forebrain (Andreeva *et al.*, *J. Neurosci.*, **2001**, 21 (22), 9068-9076). The hippocampus, cortex and basal forebrain in particular play an important role in learning and memory processes. As already mentioned above, PDE9A is distinguished by having particularly high 10 affinity for cGMP. PDE9A is therefore active even at low physiological concentrations, in contrast to PDE2A (Km=10 micromolar (μM); Martins *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1982**, 257, 1973-1979), PDE5A (Km=4 micromolar (μM); Francis *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1980**, 255, 620-626), PDE6A (Km=17 micromolar; Gillespie and Beavo, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1988**, 263 (17), 8133-8141) and PDE11A (Km=0.52 micromolar; 15 Fawcett *et al.*, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, **2000**, 97 (7), 3702-3707). In contrast to PDE2A (Murashima *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, **1990**, 29, 5285-5292), the catalytic activity of PDE9A is not increased by cGMP because it has no GAF domain (cGMP-binding domain via which the PDE activity is allosterically increased) (Beavo *et al.*, *Current Opinion in Cell Biology*, **2000**, 12, 174-179). PDE9A inhibitors may therefore lead to 20 an increase in the baseline cGMP concentration.

This outline will make it evident that PDE9A engages into specific physiological processes in a characteristic and unique manner, which distinguish the role of PDE9A characteristically from any of the other PDE family members.

WO04018474 discloses phenyl-substituted pyrazolopyrimidinones comprising inter 25 alia an unsubstituted cycloalkyl moiety in the 1 position of the pyrazolopyrimidine.

WO04026876 discloses alkyl-substituted pyrazolopyrimidinones comprising inter alia an unsubstituted cycloalkyl moiety in the 1 position of the pyrazolopyrimidine.

WO04096811 disclose heterocyclic bicycles as PDE9 inhibitors for the treatment of diabetes, including type 1 and type 2 diabetes, hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, impaired 30 glucose tolerance, metabolic syndrome, and/or cardiovascular disease.

US6479463 discloses nucleosidanaloga for antiviral use.

## OBJECTIVE OF THE INVENTION

It will be evident that changes in the substitution pattern of pyrazolopyrimidinones may result in interesting changes concerning biological activity, respectively changes

5 in the affinity towards different target enzymes.

Therefore it is an objective of the present invention to provide compounds that effectively modulate PDE9A for the purpose of the development of a medicament, in particular in view of diseases, the treatment of which is accessible via PDE9A

10 modulation.

It is another objective of the present invention to provide compounds that are useful for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of CNS disorders.

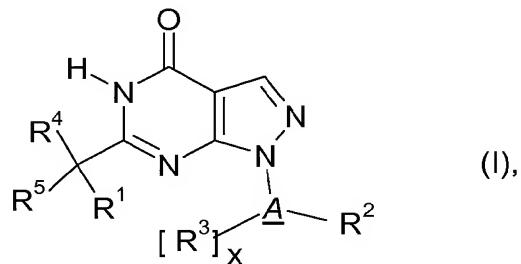
Yet another objective of the present invention is to provide compounds which show a favourable side effect profile.

15 Another objective of the present invention is to provide compounds that have a favourable selectively profile in favour for PDE9A inhibition over other PDE family members and other pharmacological targets and by this may provide therapeutic advantage.

20 Yet another objective is to provide such a medicament not only for treatment but also for prevention or modification of the corresponding disease.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

The compounds of the present invention are characterised by general formula I:



5

with the following definitions:

A is defined via the following definitions A<sup>i</sup>, whereby the index i describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e. A<sup>1</sup>) to more preferably (i.e. A<sup>2</sup>), and so on:

10 **A<sup>1</sup>** A being a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group or a C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl; and the members of the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl.

15

20 **A<sup>2</sup>** A being a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group or a C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl; and the members of the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl.

In each of the definitions,  $\mathbf{A}^1$ ,  $\mathbf{A}^2$ ,  $\mathbf{A}$  may be either only the C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group ( $\mathbf{A}^{1a}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}^{2a}$ ) or only the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group ( $\mathbf{A}^{1b}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}^{2b}$ ).

$\mathbf{A}^3$   $\mathbf{A}$  being a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl

5 group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl.

$\mathbf{A}^4$   $\mathbf{A}$  being a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>-cycloalkyl group the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

10

$\mathbf{A}^5$   $\mathbf{A}$  being cyclohexyl, preferably cyclohex-1-yl with at least one of  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$  being attached to the 4-position of said cyclohex-1-yl, more preferably cyclohex-1-yl with  $\mathbf{R}^2$  and one  $\mathbf{R}^3$  being attached to the 4-position of said cyclohex-1-yl and no further  $\mathbf{R}^3$  substituent being attached to said cyclohex-1-yl (i.e. x = 1).

15

$\mathbf{R}^1$  is defined via the following definitions  $\mathbf{R}^{1,j}$  whereby the index j describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{1,1}$ ) to more preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{1,2}$ ), and so on. The definition  $\mathbf{R}^{1,0,1}$  is an independently preferred embodiment:

$\mathbf{R}^{1,1}$   $\mathbf{R}^1$  being a substituent selected from the group of

20 C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkynyl-,  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$ -S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$ -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,  
25 heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl- and heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,

where the above mentioned members may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1,1,S1}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group preferably is only a substituent for a cycloalkyl group or a heterocycloalkyl group, HO-, NC-,

O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-O-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-,

5 C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-O- with C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O- with C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl being bound to the C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl- via one of its ring-C-atoms, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-

10 CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-;

15 whereby any of the C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl-, heteroaryl-groups of aforementioned group R<sup>1.1.s1</sup> may optionally be substituted by a member of the group R<sup>1.1.s2</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-,

20 R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-.

R<sup>1.2</sup> R<sup>1</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of

C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,

30 where the above mentioned members may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group R<sup>1.2.s1</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group preferably

is only a substituent for a heterocycloalkyl group, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-O-,

5 tetrahydropyranyl-O-, piperidinyl-O- with piperidinyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, pyrrolidinyl-O- with pyrrolidinyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-;

10 whereby any of the C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, heteroaryl, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyranyl, piperidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrrolidinyl-groups of the aforementioned group R<sup>1.2.S1</sup> may optionally be substituted by a member of the group R<sup>1.2.S2</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-. Preferably piperidinyl or pyrrolidinyl are substituted by R<sup>10</sup>-CO-.

R<sup>1.3</sup> R<sup>1</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of

phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuran and tetrahydropyranyl,

where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group R<sup>1.3.S1</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuran and

25 tetrahydropyranyl, HO-, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-O-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and phenyl,

30 whereby the pyridyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group R<sup>1.3.S1</sup> may optionally be substituted by a member of the group R<sup>1.3.S2</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO-, NC-, morpholinyl and benzyl-O-.

**R<sup>1.4</sup>**  $\mathbf{R}^1$  being a substituent selected from the group of

phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, ethyl, 1- and 2-propyl, 1- and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and

5 tetrahydropyranyl,

where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>1.4.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuran and tetrahydropyranyl, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, pyridyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-

10 methyl-, N-morpholinyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl and phenyl,

whereby the pyridyl, pyrazolyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group **R<sup>1.4.S1</sup>** may optionally be substituted by a member of the group **R<sup>1.4.S2</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO- and NC-.

15 **R<sup>1.5</sup>**  $\mathbf{R}^1$  being a substituent selected from the group of

phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby said phenyl or 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl optionally may be substituted by C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-.

**R<sup>1.0.1</sup>**  $\mathbf{R}^1$  being aryl or heteroaryl,

20 with said aryl being phenyl, and said heteroaryl being selected from the group of 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, preferably phenyl and pyridyl, whereby said aryl and each of said heteroaryl being substituted by one member of the group **R<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup>** which consists of phenyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group **R<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup>** being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

and more preferred the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  consists of oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

5

and whereby said aryl and said heteroaryl and/or the member of said group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  optionally may be substituted by one or more members of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCO}-$ , N-morpholinyl, and  $\text{NC}-$ , preferably  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  consists of fluorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$  and  $\text{NC}-$ .

10

$\mathbf{R}^2$  is a mandatory substituent and different from H (i.e. hydrogen). It is defined via the following definitions  $\mathbf{R}^{2.k}$  whereby the index k describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{2.1}$ ) to more preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{2.2}$ ), and so on:

15  $\mathbf{R}^{2.1}$   $\mathbf{R}^2$  being a substituent selected from the group of

fluorine,  $\text{NC}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{HF}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{FH}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-\text{CH}_2-$ , carboxy-,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-C}_{1-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ ,

20  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ , heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-C}_{1-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ , and  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-SO}_2\text{-}$ ,

25 where the above mentioned members  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-C}_{1-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-7}\text{-cycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkenyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}\text{-heterocycloalkyl-C}_{2-6}\text{-alkynyl-}$ , aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-C}_{1-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,

30  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10}\text{)N-}$ , and  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-SO}_2\text{-}$ ,

$R^{10}O-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^{10}-O-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^{10}-SO_2-(R^{10})N-$ , and  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl- $SO_2-$  may optionally be substituted

independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group

**R<sup>2.1.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-,  $O_2N-$ ,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,

5  $F_3C-CH_2-$ ,  $HO-C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-, and  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-$ ,

or

10 **R<sup>2.1</sup>** and **R<sup>3.1</sup>** together form a  $C_{2-6}$ -alkylene bridge, wherein one or two  $CH_2$  groups of the  $C_{2-6}$ -alkylene bridge may be replaced independently of one another by O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ ,  $N(R^{10})$  or  $N-C(O)-R^{10}$  in such a way that in each case two O or S atoms or an O and an S atom are not joined together directly.

15

**R<sup>2.2</sup>**  $R^2$  being a substituent selected from the group of

fluorine, NC-,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,  $F_3C-CH_2-$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $R^{10}-S-$ ,  $R^{10}-S-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_3$ -

8-heterocycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, aryl, aryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, heteroaryl-,

20 heteroaryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $R^{10}-O-$ ,  $R^{10}-O-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N-$ ,  $R^{10}O-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-(R^{10})N-$  and  $R^{10}-O-CO-(R^{10})N-$ ,

where the above mentioned members  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $R^{10}-S-$ ,  $R^{10}-S-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $C_3$ -8-heterocycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, aryl, aryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,

25  $R^{10}-O-$ ,  $R^{10}-O-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N-$ ,  $R^{10}O-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-(R^{10})N-$ ,  $R^{10}-CO-$ ,  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-(R^{10})N-$  and  $R^{10}-O-CO-(R^{10})N-$  may optionally be substituted

independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group

**R<sup>2.2.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-,  $O_2N-$ ,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,

$F_3C-CH_2-$ ,  $HO-C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N-$ ,

30  $(R^{10})_2N-C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-, and  $(R^{10})_2N-CO-$ ,

**R<sup>2.3</sup>** R<sup>2</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, HO-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>2-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N- and R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-,

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, HO-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-

5 O-C<sub>2-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N- and R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>2.3.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and F<sub>3</sub>C-,

10 **R<sup>2.4</sup>** R<sup>2</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of fluorine, methyl, HO-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-, phenyl, H<sub>2</sub>N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-CO-(H)N- and phenyl-CO-(H)N-,

where the above mentioned members methyl, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-, phenyl, H<sub>2</sub>N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-CO-(H)N-, phenyl-CO-(H)N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more fluorine,

15

**R<sup>2.5</sup>** R<sup>2</sup> being fluorine

**R<sup>3</sup>** is defined by the following definitions **R<sup>3.i</sup>** whereby the index i describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e. **R<sup>3.1</sup>**) to more preferably (i.e. **R<sup>3.2</sup>**), and

20 so on:

**R<sup>3.1</sup>** R<sup>3</sup> independently of any other R<sup>3</sup> being a substituent selected from

fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-,

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-,

30 aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-, ( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-CO-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-, ( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-, and  $R^{10}$ -O-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $R^{3.1.s1}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, 5 C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, ( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-, ( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and ( $R^{10}$ )<sub>2</sub>N-CO-,

**R<sup>3.2</sup>**  $R^3$  independently of any other  $R^3$  being a substituent selected from

fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, methyl, ethyl, methoxy-, pyridyl, pyridylmethyl-, phenyl and benzyl,

10 where the above mentioned members F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, methyl, ethyl, methoxy-, pyridyl, pyridylmethyl-, phenyl and benzyl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one fluorine,

**R<sup>3.3</sup>**  $R^3$  independently of any other  $R^3$  being a substituent selected from

15 fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>- and methyl,

**R<sup>3.4</sup>**  $R^3$  being fluorine.

20  $R^{4/5}$  is defined by the following definitions  $R^{4/5.m}$  whereby the index m describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e.  $R^{4/5.1}$ ) to more preferably (i.e.  $R^{4/5.2}$ ), and so on:

**R<sup>4/5.1</sup>**  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  being independently of one another a substituent (substituents) selected from H-, fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, and C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

25 or

**R<sup>4.1</sup> and R<sup>5.1</sup> together** with the carbon atom to which they are bound form a 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group,

where the above mentioned members including the 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group formed by  $\mathbf{R}^{4.1}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{5.1}$  may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{4/5.1.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O- and (C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-.

$\mathbf{R}^{4/5.2}$   $\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  being independently of one another substituent (substituents) selected from H and fluorine, preferably  $\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  both being H.

$\mathbf{R}^{4/5.3}$   $\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  being H.

10

$\mathbf{R}^{10}$  is defined by the following definitions  $\mathbf{R}^{10.n}$  whereby the index n describes the order of preference, ascending from preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{10.1}$ ) to more preferably (i.e.  $\mathbf{R}^{10.2}$ ), and so on:

15  $\mathbf{R}^{10.1}$   $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  independently from any other potential  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  being a substituent selected from

H, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

20

and in case where two  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring, and wherein one of the -CH<sub>2</sub>-groups of the heterocyclic ring formed may be replaced by -O-, -S-, -NH-, N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl)-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- or -N(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)-

25 and

where the above mentioned members F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl- and in case

30 where two  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together

with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring as defined above may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{10.1.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1</sub>-

5 C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl- and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-.

$\mathbf{R}^{10.2}$   $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  independently from any other potential  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  being a substituent selected from the group of H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl,

10

and in case where two  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring, and wherein one of the -CH<sub>2</sub>-groups of the heterocyclic ring formed may be replaced by -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl)-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- or -N(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- and

15

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl and in case where two  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring as defined above may optionally be substituted

20

independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{10.2.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1</sub>-

6-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-.

$\mathbf{R}^{10.3}$   $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  independently from any other potential  $\mathbf{R}^{10}$  being a substituent selected from the group of H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{10.3.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-,

30

FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-.

**R<sup>10.4</sup>** **R<sup>10</sup>** independently from any other potential **R<sup>10</sup>** being a substituent selected from the group of H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, phenyl and pyridyl;

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, phenyl, pyridyl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from

5 the group **R<sup>10.4.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-.

**R<sup>10.5</sup>** **R<sup>10</sup>** independently from any other potential **R<sup>10</sup>** being a substituent selected from the group of H-, methyl, ethyl and tert.-butyl,

10 where the above mentioned members methyl, ethyl and tert.-butyl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine.

**x** independently from each other **x** being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1,2, more

15 preferably being 0 or 1. In case **x** being 0, there is a **H** at the appropriate position.

The letters i, j, k, l, m, n in **A<sup>i</sup>**, **R<sup>1.j</sup>**, **R<sup>2.k</sup>** etc. are indices, each of which shall have the meaning of an integer figure: 1, 2, 3, etc.

Thus, each set of (**A<sup>i</sup> R<sup>1.j</sup> R<sup>2.k</sup> R<sup>3.l</sup> R<sup>4/5.m</sup> R<sup>10.n</sup>**), in which the letters i, j, k, l, m, n are

20 defined by figures, represents a characterised, individual (generic) embodiment of a compound according to general formula I, whereby **x** is as hereinbefore described, namely 0,1,2,3,4, preferably 0,1,2, more preferably 0 or 1. The specific definitions of the substituents **A<sup>i</sup>**, **R<sup>1.j</sup>**, **R<sup>2.k</sup>**, **R<sup>3.l</sup>**, **R<sup>4/5.m</sup>**, **R<sup>10.n</sup>** have herein been defined.

It will be evident that the term (**A<sup>i</sup> R<sup>1.j</sup> R<sup>2.k</sup> R<sup>3.l</sup> R<sup>4/5.m</sup> R<sup>10.n</sup>**) represents the complete

25 plurality of embodiments for a given **x** of the subject matter of formula I if all indices i, j, k, l, m, and n are considered.

All individual embodiments (**A<sup>i</sup> R<sup>1.j</sup> R<sup>2.k</sup> R<sup>3.l</sup> R<sup>4/5.m</sup> R<sup>10.n</sup>**) described by the term in brackets shall be comprised by the present invention.

The following matrices 1 and 2 shows such embodiments of the inventions that are considered preferred (in the order from less preferred to most preferred, the preference of the embodiments ascending from top to down. This means that the embodiment, which is presented by the matrix element in the last row is the most preferred embodiment):

A compound characterised by general formula (I), in which the substituents are defined as and of the following matrix elements ( $A^i R^{1..j} R^{2..k} R^{3..l} R^{4/5..m} R^{10..n}$ ):

matrix 1:

Matrix element No.	set of definitions of substituents
M1-01	( $A^1 R^{1..1} R^{2..1} R^{3..1} R^{4/5..1} R^{10..1}$ )
M1-02	( $A^2 R^{1..1} R^{2..1} R^{3..1} R^{4/5..1} R^{10..1}$ )
M1-03	( $A^3 R^{1..1} R^{2..1} R^{3..1} R^{4/5..1} R^{10..1}$ )
M1-04	( $A^4 R^{1..1} R^{2..1} R^{3..1} R^{4/5..1} R^{10..1}$ )
M1-05	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..3} R^{3..2} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..2}$ )
M1-06	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..3} R^{3..2} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-07	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..3} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..2}$ )
M1-08	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..3} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-09	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..4} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..3}$ )
M1-10	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..4} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-11	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..5} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-12	( $A^4 R^{1..2} R^{2..5} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..5}$ )
M1-13	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..3} R^{3..2} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..2}$ )
M1-14	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..3} R^{3..2} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-15	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..3} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..2}$ )
M1-16	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..3} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-17	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..4} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )
M1-18	( $A^4 R^{1..3} R^{2..5} R^{3..3} R^{4/5..2} R^{10..4}$ )

M1-19	$(A^4 R^{1.3} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-20	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.3} R^{3.2} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.2})$
M1-21	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.3} R^{3.2} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-22	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.3} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.2})$
M1-23	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.3} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-24	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.4} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-25	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.5} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-26	$(A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-27	$(A^5 R^{1.1} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-28	$(A^5 R^{1.1} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.5})$
M1-29	$(A^5 R^{1.2} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-30	$(A^5 R^{1.2} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.5})$
M1-31	$(A^5 R^{1.3} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-32	$(A^5 R^{1.4} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4})$
M1-33	$(A^5 R^{1.5} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2})$

whereby for each embodiments

$x$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1.

5 Another aspect of the invention concerns a compound characterised by general formula (I), in which the substituents are defined as and of the following matrix elements  $(A^i R^{1,j} R^{2,k} R^{3,l} R^{4/5,m} R^{10,n})$ :

matrix 2:

Matrix element No.	set of definitions of substituents
M2-01	$(A^1 R^{1.0.1} R^{2.4} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2})$
M2-02	$(A^1 R^{1.0.1} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2})$
M2-03	$(A^2 R^{1.0.1} R^{2.4} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2})$

M2-04	(A <sup>2</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.5</sup> R <sup>3.4</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-05	(A <sup>3</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.4</sup> R <sup>3.3</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-06	(A <sup>3</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.5</sup> R <sup>3.4</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-07	(A <sup>4</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.4</sup> R <sup>3.3</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-08	(A <sup>4</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.5</sup> R <sup>3.4</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-09	(A <sup>5</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.4</sup> R <sup>3.3</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )
M2-10	(A <sup>5</sup> R <sup>1.0.1</sup> R <sup>2.5</sup> R <sup>3.4</sup> R <sup>4/5.2</sup> )

whereby for each embodiments

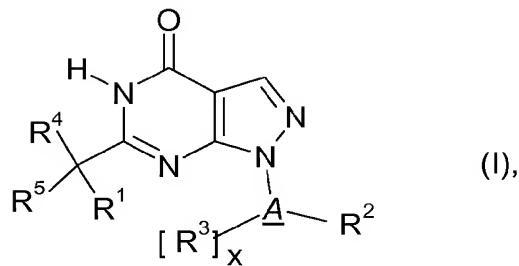
$x$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1.

5 In case one substituent  $A^i$ ,  $R^{1,j}$ ,  $R^{2,k}$ ,  $R^{3,l}$ ,  $R^{4/5,m}$ ,  $R^{10,n}$  is not defined in any of the elements of the matrices 1 or 2, it shall be  $A^4$ , preferably  $A^5$  for  $A^i$ ,  $R^{1,4}$ , preferably  $R^{1,5}$  for  $R^{1,j}$ ,  $R^{2,4}$ , preferably  $R^{2,5}$  for  $R^{2,k}$ ,  $R^{3,4}$ , preferably  $R^{3,5}$  for  $R^{3,l}$ ,  $R^{4/5,2}$ , preferably  $R^{4/5,3}$  for  $R^{4/5,m}$  and  $R^{10,4}$ , preferably  $R^{10,5}$  for  $R^{10,n}$ .

10 All embodiments of the invention as herein described include salts of the compounds of the invention, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of the invention.

15 In order to illustrate the meaning of the aforementioned matrix elements, the following examples shall be given:

Matrix element M1-01 ( $A^1R^{1.1}R^{2.1}R^{3.1}R^{4/5.1}R^{10.1}$ ) represents a compound according to general formula I



with

**A** being a substituent selected from the group of A<sup>1</sup> being a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group or

5 a C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl,

and the members of the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl,

10 cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl;

**R<sup>1</sup>** being a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>1.1</sup> being C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkenyl-,

C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-

15 , C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl -C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl- and heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,

where the above mentioned members may optionally be substituted independently of

20 one another by one or more substituents selected from the group R<sup>1.1.S1</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group preferably is only a substituent for a cycloalkyl group or a heterocycloalkyl group,

HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,

R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-</sub>

25 6-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,

heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-O-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>3-</sub>

8-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-O- with C<sub>3-</sub>

$\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O- being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-

$\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-O- with  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl being bound to the  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl- via one of its

ring-C-atoms,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-}$ ,

$(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-}$

5  $\text{CO-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-O-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -

alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-O-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-O-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-}$

$\text{SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-}$ ,

$(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, and  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl- $\text{SO}_2\text{-}$ ,

10 whereby any of the  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-, aryl-, heteroaryl-groups of aforementioned group  $\text{R}^{1.1.\text{S}1}$  may optionally be substituted by a member of the group

$\text{R}^{1.1.\text{S}2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine,  $\text{HO-}$ ,  $\text{NC-}$ ,  $\text{O}_2\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-}$ ,  $\text{HF}_2\text{C-}$ ,

$\text{FH}_2\text{C-}$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-CH}_2\text{-}$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-O-}$ ,  $\text{HF}_2\text{C-O-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$

$\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$

15  $\text{CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,

$\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-O-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,

$(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-O-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-O-}$

$\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-

,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-SO}_2\text{-C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, and  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-

20  $\text{SO}_2\text{-}$ ;

$\text{R}^2$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\text{R}^{2.1}$  being fluorine,  $\text{NC-}$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-}$ ,

$\text{HF}_2\text{C-}$ ,  $\text{FH}_2\text{C-}$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-CH}_2\text{-}$ , carboxy-,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,

$\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-C}_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -

alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -

25  $\text{alkyl-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-, aryl,

aryl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, aryl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-, aryl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,

heteroaryl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-, heteroaryl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-C}_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,

$\text{R}^{10}\text{O-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-CO-}$ ,  $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-}$

$(\text{R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-SO}_2\text{-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ , and  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl- $\text{SO}_2\text{-}$ ,

30 where the above mentioned members  $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-}$ ,

$\text{R}^{10}\text{-S-C}_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -

alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{1-6}$ -

alkyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $\text{C}_{2-6}$ -alkynyl-, aryl,

aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>- may optionally be substituted

5 independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>2.1.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-,

10 or

15 **R<sup>2.1</sup>** and **R<sup>3.1</sup>** together form a C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene bridge, wherein one or two CH<sub>2</sub> groups of the C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene bridge may be replaced independently of one another by O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, N(R<sup>10</sup>) or N-C(O)-R<sup>10</sup> in such a way that in each case two O or S atoms or an O and an S atom are not joined together directly;

20 **R<sup>3</sup>** independently of any other **R<sup>3</sup>** being a substituent selected from the group of **R<sup>3.1</sup>** being fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-,

25 where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and R<sup>10</sup>-O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>3.1.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-;

30 **R<sup>4</sup>** and **R<sup>5</sup>** being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group of **R<sup>4/5.1</sup>** being H-, fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, and C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

or

**R<sup>4.1</sup> and R<sup>5.1</sup> together** with the carbon atom to which they are bound form a 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group,

where the above mentioned members including the 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group formed by **R<sup>4.1</sup> and R<sup>5.1</sup>** may optionally be substituted independently of one

5 another by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>4/5.1.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O- and (C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-;

**R<sup>10</sup>** independently from any other potential **R<sup>10</sup>** being a substituent being selected

10 from the group of **R<sup>10.1</sup>** being H, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

and in case where two **R<sup>10</sup>** groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they

15 may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring, and wherein one of the -CH<sub>2</sub>-groups of the heterocyclic ring formed may be replaced by -O-, -S-, -NH-, N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl)-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- or -N(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- and

20 where the above mentioned members F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl- and in case where two **R<sup>10</sup>** groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring as defined

25 above may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group **R<sup>10.1.S1</sup>** which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl- and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-;

**x** being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

30 and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Matrix element M1-19 ( $A^4R^{1.3}R^{2.5}R^{3.4}R^{4/5.2}R^{10.4}$ ) represents a compound according to general formula I

with

A being a substituent selected from the group of  $A^4$  being a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>-cycloalkyl group

5 the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl;

$R^1$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $R^{1.3}$  being phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranly,

10 where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group  $R^{1.3.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranly, HO-, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-O-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and phenyl,

15 whereby the pyridyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group  $R^{1.3.S1}$  may optionally be substituted by a member of the group  $R^{1.3.S2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO-, NC-, morpholinyl and benzyl-O-;

20  $R^2$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{2.5}$  being fluorine;

$R^3$  independently of any other  $R^3$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{3.4}$  being fluorine;

$R^4$  and  $R^5$  being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group of  $R^{4/5.2}$  being H and fluorine, preferably  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  both being H;

25  $R^{10}$  independently of any other  $R^{10}$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{10.4}$  being H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, phenyl and pyridyl;

$x$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In a specific embodiment of the latter matrix element M1-19  $R^{10}$  independently of any other  $R^{10}$  preferably is H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-.

5

Matrix element M1-26 ( $A^4 R^{1.4} R^{2.5} R^{3.4} R^{4/5.2} R^{10.4}$ ) represents a compound according to general formula I

with

A being a substituent selected from the group of  $A^4$  being a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>-cycloalkyl group

10 the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl;

$R^1$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $R^{1.4}$  being phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, ethyl, 1- and 2-propyl, 1- and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl,

where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents

15 selected from the group  $R^{1.4.S1}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, pyridyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-methyl-, N-morpholinyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl and phenyl,

whereby the pyridyl, pyrazolyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group  $R^{1.4.S1}$

20 may optionally be substituted by a member of the group  $R^{1.4.S2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO- and NC-;

$R^2$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{2.5}$  being fluorine;

$R^3$  independently of any other  $R^3$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{3.4}$  being fluorine;

25

$R^4$  and  $R^5$  being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group of  $R^{4/5.2}$  being H and fluorine, preferably  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  both being H;

$R^{10}$  independently of any other  $R^{10}$  being a substituent of the group of  $R^{10.4}$  being H-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, phenyl and pyridyl;

$x$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

5 and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Matrix element M2-01 ( $A^1 R^{1.0.1} R^{2.4} R^{3.3} R^{4/5.2}$ ) represents a compound according to general formula I

with

10  $A$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $A^1$  being a  $C_3-C_8$ -cycloalkyl group or a  $C_4-C_8$ -cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of  $C_3-C_8$ -cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl,  
and the members of the  $C_4-C_8$ -cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl,  
15 cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl;

$R^1$  being defined as outlined for  $R^{1.0.1}$ , namely  $R^1$  being aryl or heteroaryl,

with said aryl being phenyl, and said heteroaryl being selected from the group of 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, preferably phenyl and pyridyl, whereby said aryl and each of said heteroaryl being substituted by one member of the group  $R^{1.0.1.S1}$  which consists of phenyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $R^{1.0.1.S1}$  being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

25 and more preferred the group  $R^{1.0.1.S1}$  consists of oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably

said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

and whereby said aryl and said heteroaryl and/or the member of said group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  5 optionally may be substituted by one or more members of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCO}-$ , N-morpholinyl, and  $\text{NC}-$ , preferably  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  consists of fluorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$  and  $\text{NC}-$ ;

$\mathbf{R}^2$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{R}^{2.4}$  being fluorine, methyl,  $\text{HO}-$ , 10  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ , phenyl,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-CO-(H)N-}$  and phenyl-CO-(H)N-,

where the above mentioned members methyl,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ , phenyl,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-CO-(H)N-}$ , phenyl-CO-(H)N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more fluorine;

15

$\mathbf{R}^3$  independently of any other  $\mathbf{R}^3$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{R}^{3.3}$  being fluorine,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{HF}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{FH}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-CH}_2-$  and methyl;

$\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group 20 of  $\mathbf{R}^{4/5.2}$  being H and fluorine, preferably  $\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  both being H;

$\mathbf{x}$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25 Matrix element M2-07 ( $\text{A}^4\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1}\mathbf{R}^{2.4}\mathbf{R}^{3.3}\mathbf{R}^{4/5.2}$ ) represents a compound according to general formula I

with

A being a substituent selected from the group of A<sup>4</sup> being a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>-cycloalkyl group the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl;

5    **R**<sup>1</sup> being defined as outlined for **R**<sup>1.0.1</sup>, namely **R**<sup>1</sup> being aryl or heteroaryl, with said aryl being phenyl, and said heteroaryl being selected from the group of 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, preferably phenyl and pyridyl, whereby said aryl and each of said heteroaryl being substituted by one member of the group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup> which consists of phenyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, 10    pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup> being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

15    and more preferred the group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup> consists of oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup> being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

20    and whereby said aryl and said heteroaryl and/or the member of said group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup> optionally may be substituted by one or more members of the group **R**<sup>1.0.1.S2</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO-, N-morpholinyl, and NC-, preferably **R**<sup>1.0.1.S2</sup> consists of fluorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O- and NC-;

25    **R**<sup>2</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>2.4</sup> being fluorine, methyl, HO-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, phenyl, H<sub>2</sub>N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-CO-(H)N- and phenyl-CO-(H)N-,

where the above mentioned members methyl, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-, phenyl, H<sub>2</sub>N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-CO-(H)N-, phenyl-CO-(H)N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more fluorine;

5 R<sup>3</sup> independently of any other R<sup>3</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>3.3</sup> being fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>- and methyl;

R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>4/5.2</sup> being H and fluorine, preferably R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> both being H;

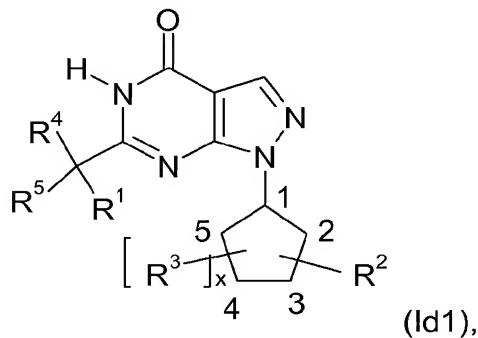
10

x being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The same principle applies for any other matrix element.

A first set of specific embodiments of the invention relates to all embodiments as 15 hereinbefore described, provided that the compound according to general formula (I) is not a compound according to the general formula (Id1):



20

in which

- the figures 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 at the cyclopentylring label the corresponding ring C atom and

- if neither  $\mathbf{R}^2$  nor  $\mathbf{R}^3$  is bound at the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 2 (i.e. at this position there is a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group); then none of  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$  are bound to the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 3 by a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group that is integral part of said  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$

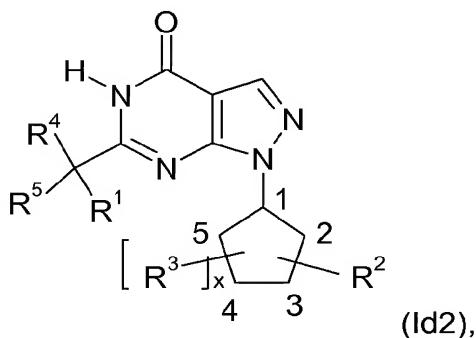
5 or

- if neither  $\mathbf{R}^2$  nor  $\mathbf{R}^3$  is bound at the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 5 (i.e. at this position there is a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group); then none of  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$  are bound to the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 4 by a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group that is integral part of said  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$

10 and

- the remaining definitions for  $\mathbf{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^2$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^3$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^4$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^5$  and  $x$  are the same as described in said appropriate generic definition of compounds according to general formula (I).

15 A second set of specific embodiments of the invention relates to all embodiments as described above the first set of specific embodiment, provided that the compound according to general formula (I) is not a compound according to the general formula (Id2):



20

in which

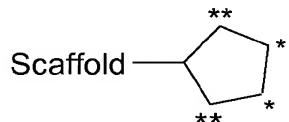
- the figures 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 at the cyclopentylring label the corresponding ring C atom;
- one or both of the cyclopentylring C atoms labelled by the figure 2 and 5 are unsubstituted (i.e.  $\text{CH}_2$ -groups);
- none of  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$  are bound to the cyclopentylring C atoms labelled by the figure 3 and 4 by a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group that is integral part of said  $\mathbf{R}^2$  or  $\mathbf{R}^3$ ; and

25

- the remaining definitions are the same as hereinbefore and herein below described.

A third set of specific embodiments of the invention relates to all embodiments as

5 described above the first and second set of specific embodiments, provided that the compound is not a compound according to general formula (I) in which **A** is cyclopentyl, **R**<sup>2</sup> and **R**<sup>3</sup> are bound to those carbon atoms of **A**



10

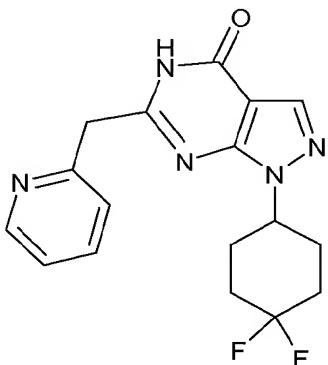
indicated by \* via a -CH<sub>2</sub>-group of said substituents **R**<sup>2</sup> or **R**<sup>3</sup> if at one or both of the positions indicated by \*\* are -CH<sub>2</sub>- groups.

### Specifically preferred compounds

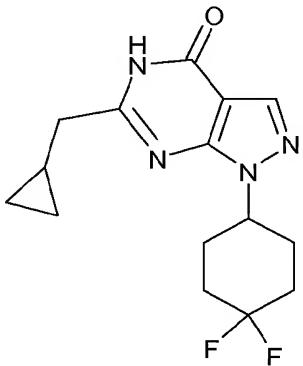
15 Each of the compounds presented in the following table is specifically and individually preferred. The listed compounds are described in detail in the section "Exemplary embodiments". The following list presents the specific compounds of the invention as neutral compounds without stereochemical properties. The example numbers are identical with the numbering according to the section "Exemplary 20 embodiments". More specific information can be found in the section "Exemplary embodiments".

Table of preferred specific embodiments as exemplified

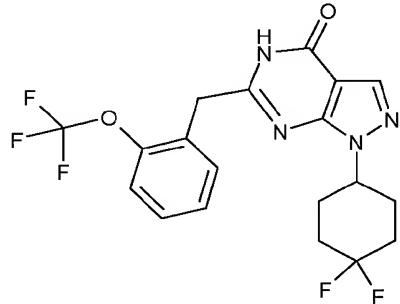
Example 1



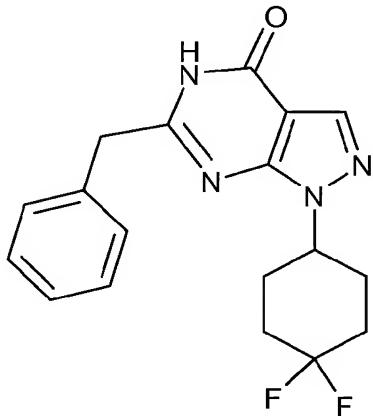
Example 2



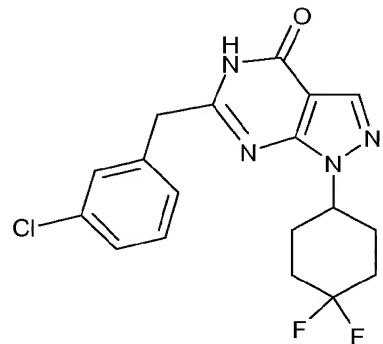
Example 3



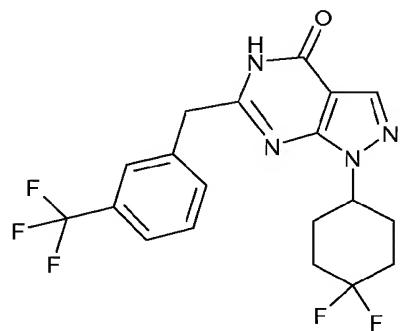
Example 4



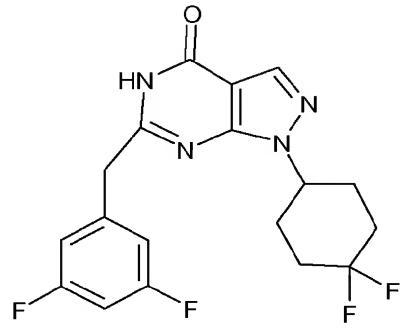
Example 5



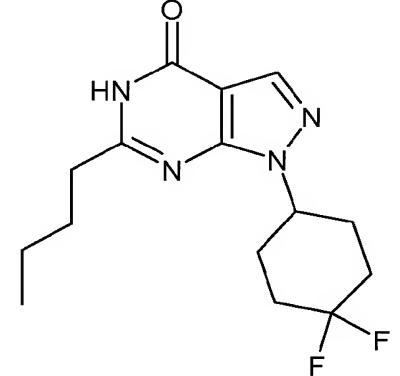
Example 6



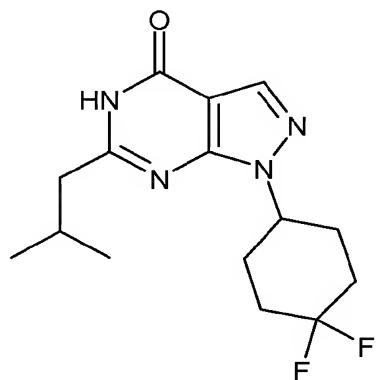
Example 7



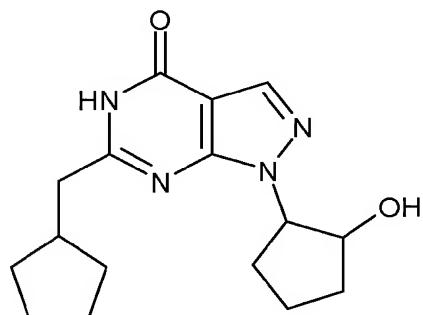
Example 8



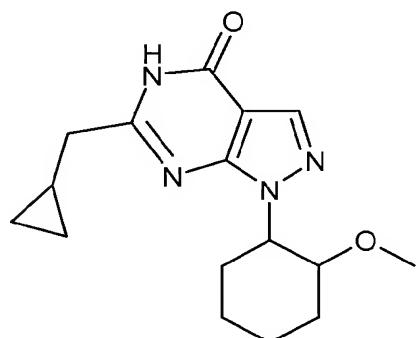
Example 9



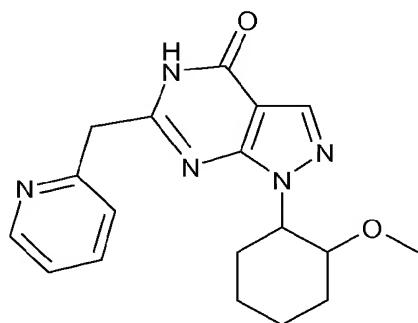
Example 10



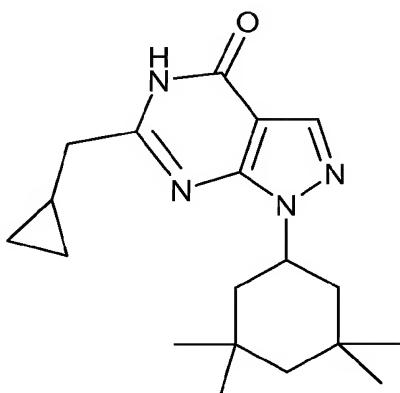
Example 11



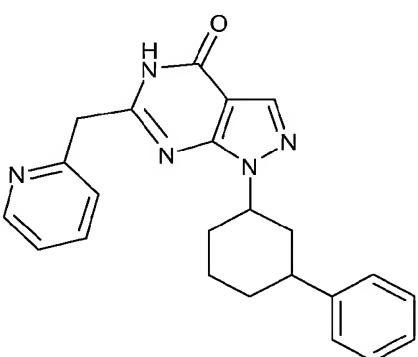
Example 12



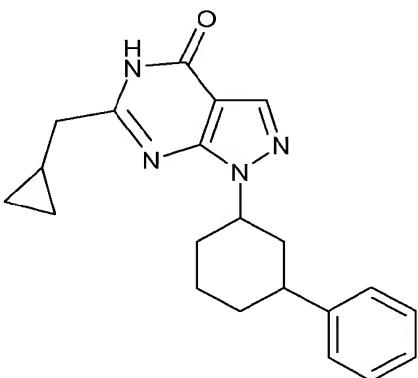
Example 13



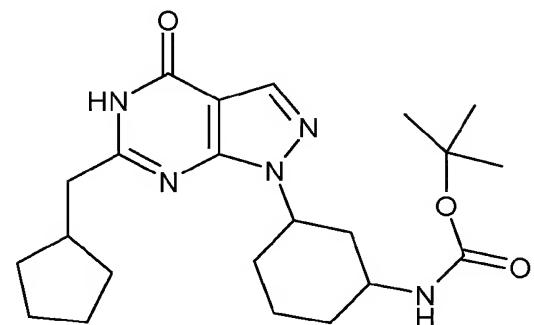
Example 14



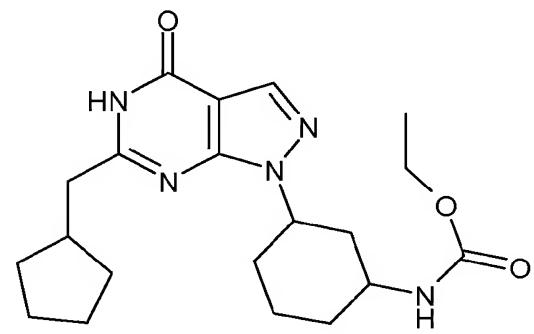
Example 15



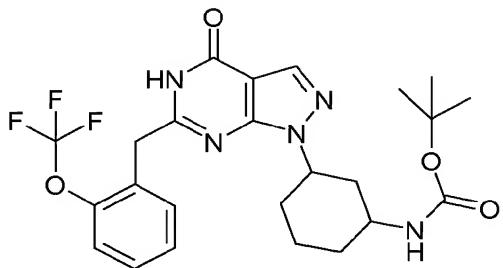
Example 16



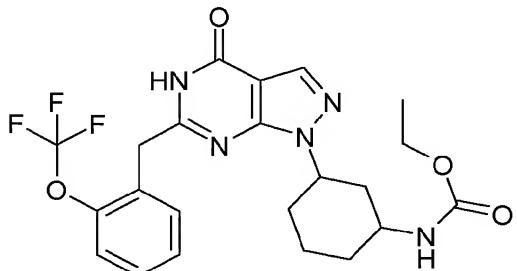
Example 17



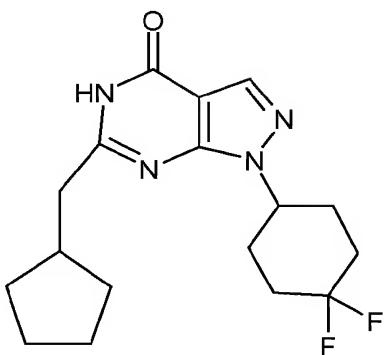
Example 18



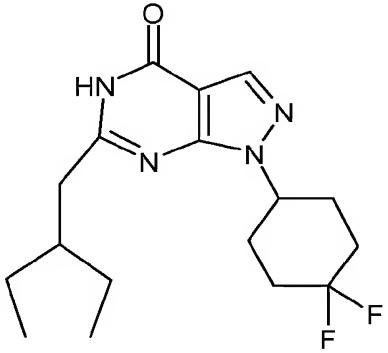
Example 19



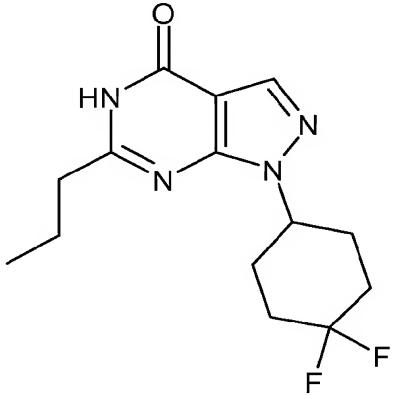
Example 20



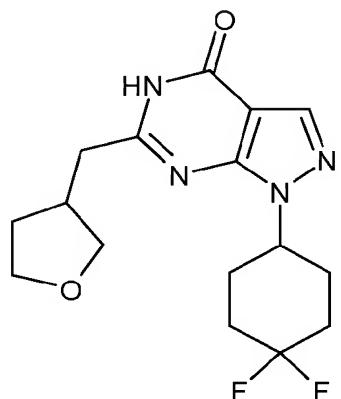
Example 21



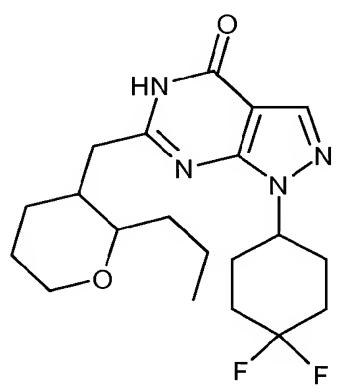
Example 22



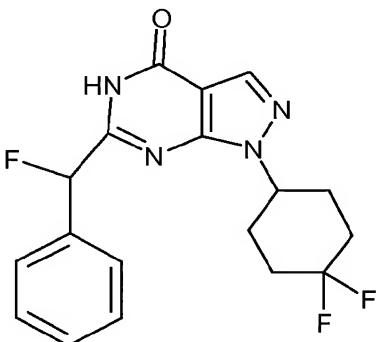
Example 23



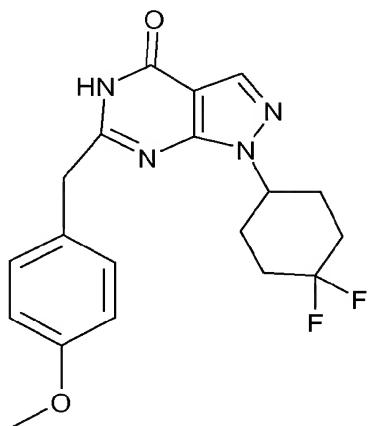
Example 24



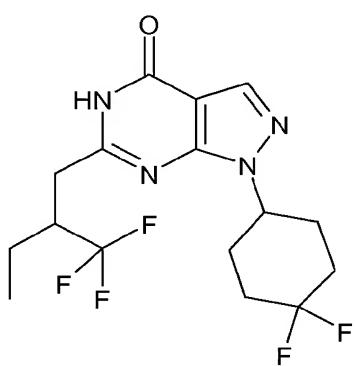
Example 25



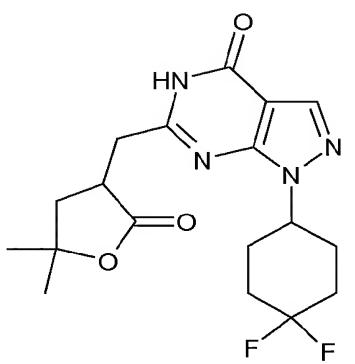
Example 26



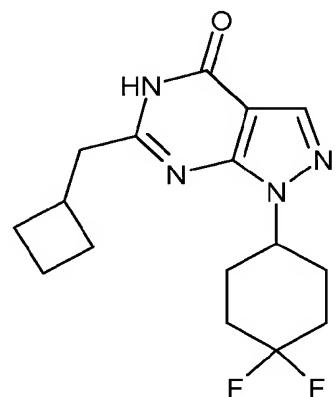
Example 27



Example 28

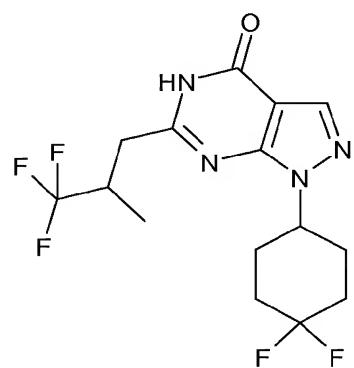


### Example 29

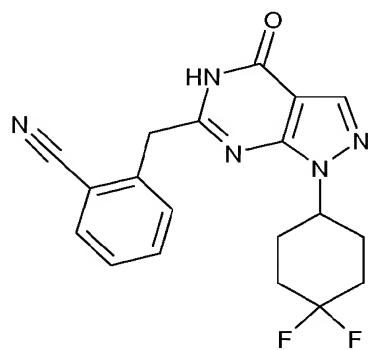


---

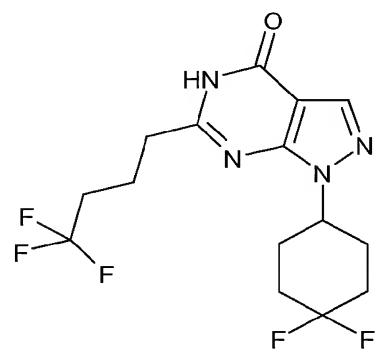
### Example 30



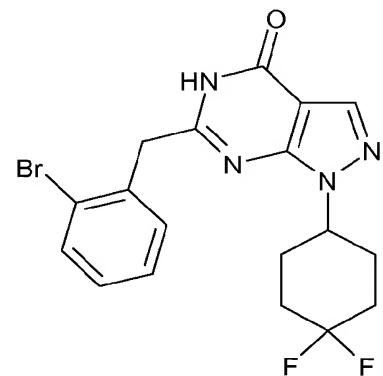
### Example 31



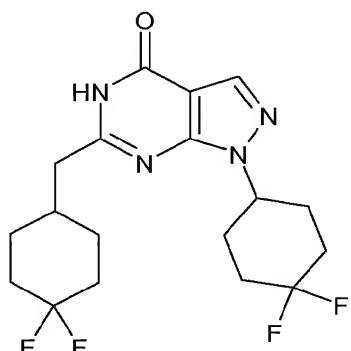
### Example 32



### Example 33

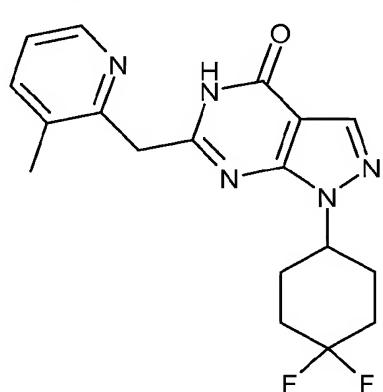


### Example 34

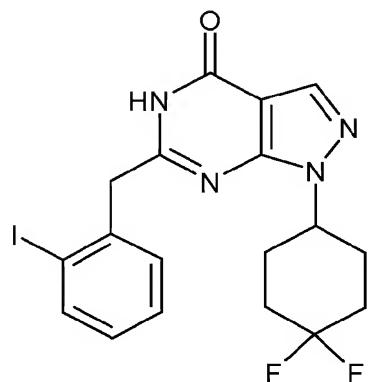


---

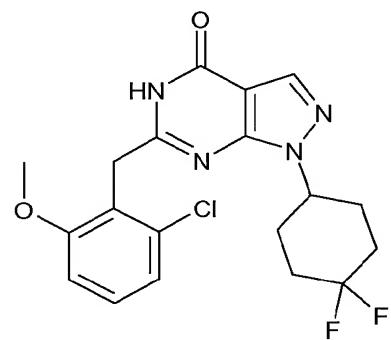
### Example 35



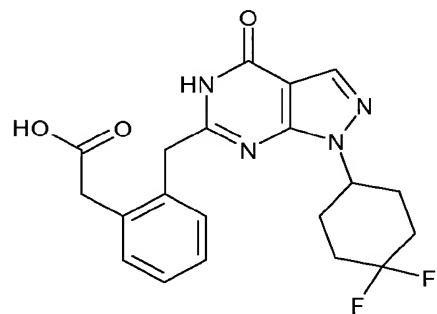
Example 36



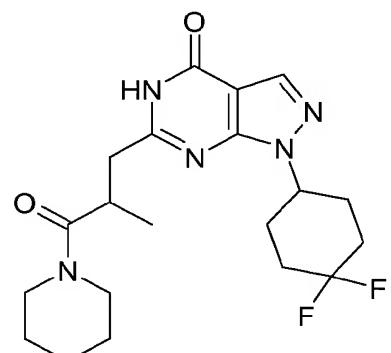
Example 37



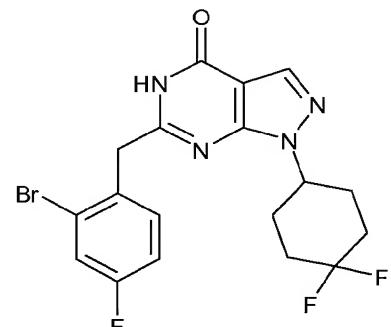
Example 38



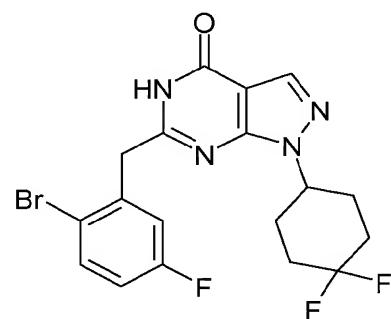
Example 39



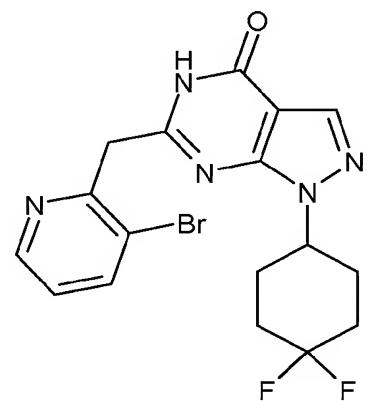
Example 44



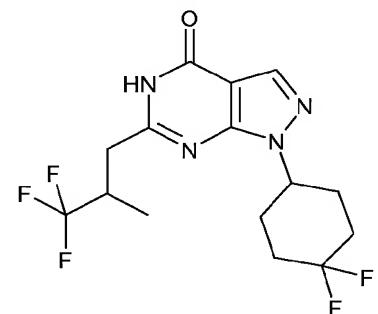
Example 45



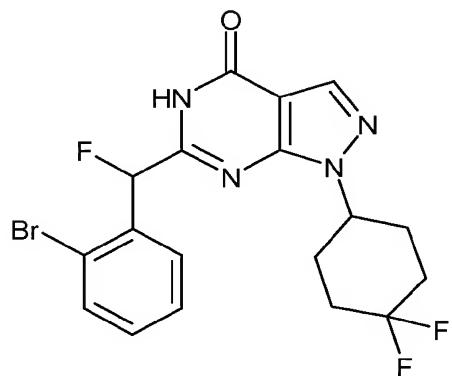
Example 46



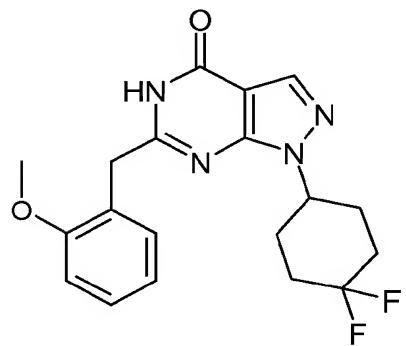
Example 47 &amp; 48



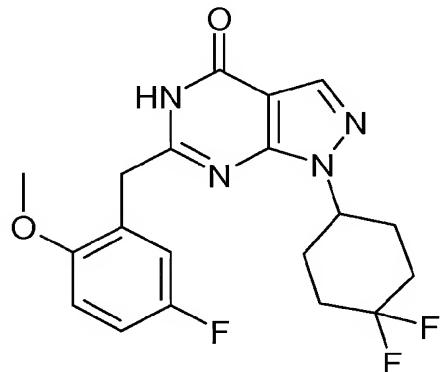
Example 48-2



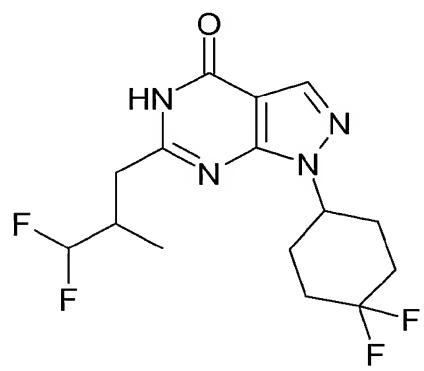
Example 48-3



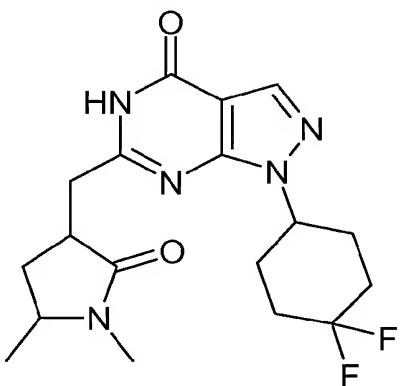
Example 48-4



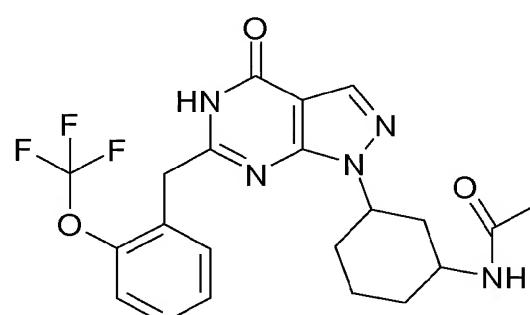
Example 48-5



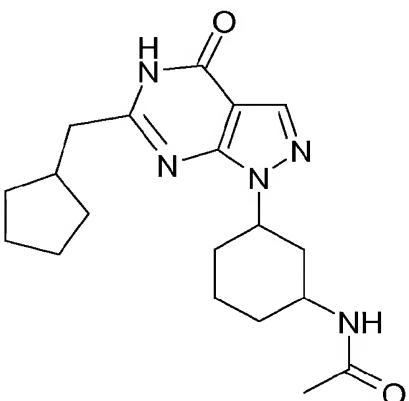
Example 48-6



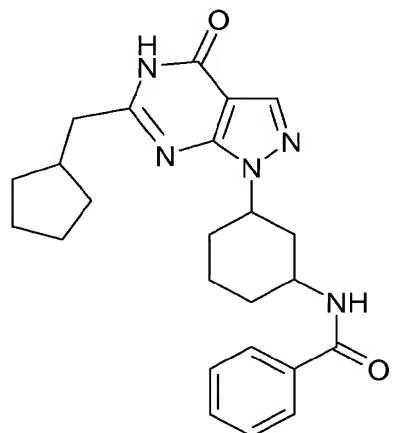
Example 49



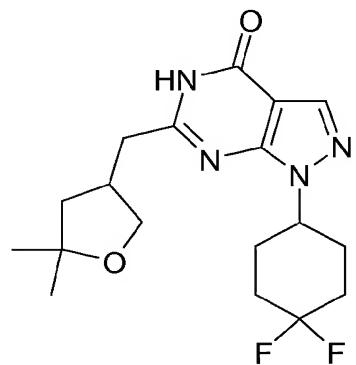
Example 50



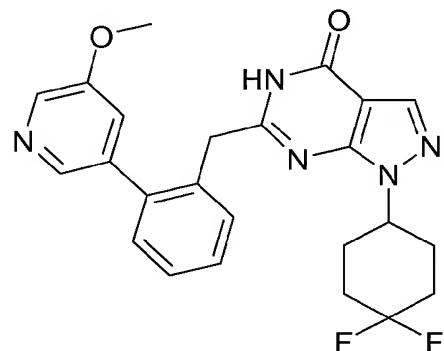
Example 51



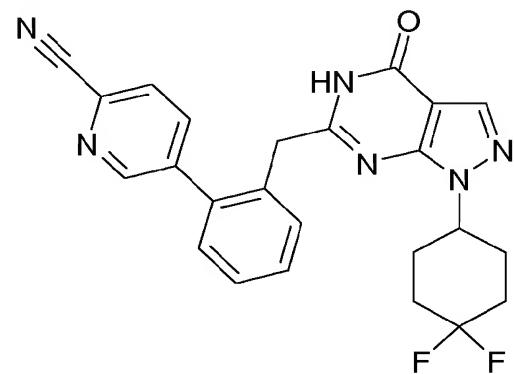
Example 52



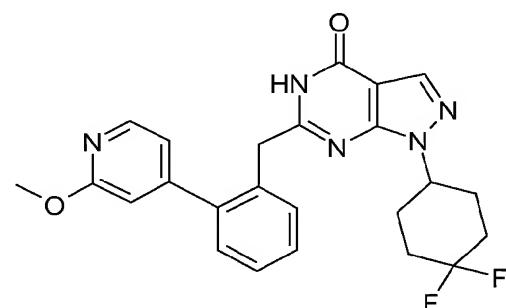
Example 53



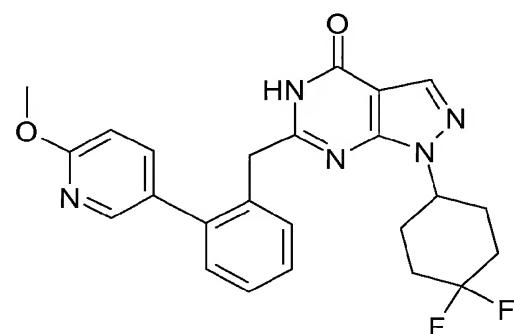
Example 54



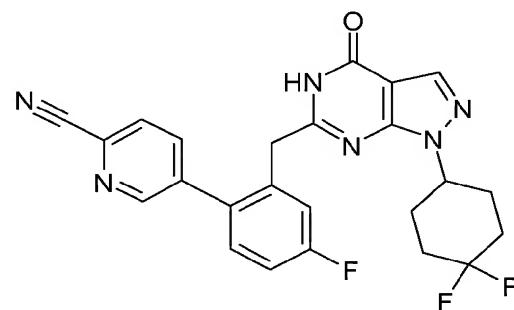
Example 55



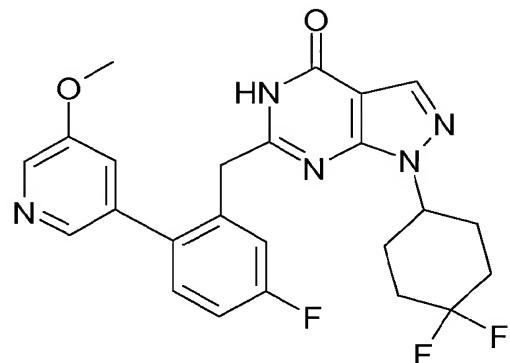
Example 56



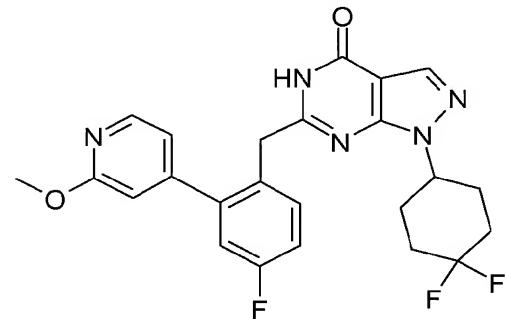
Example 57



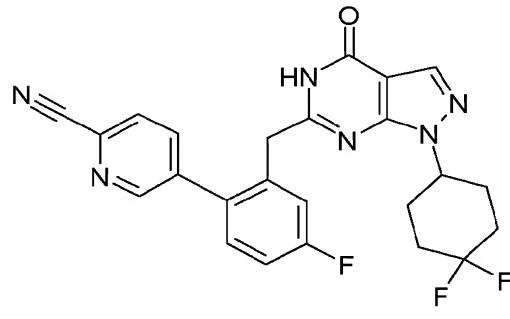
Example 58



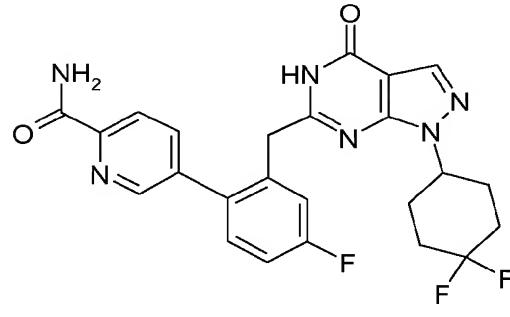
Example 59



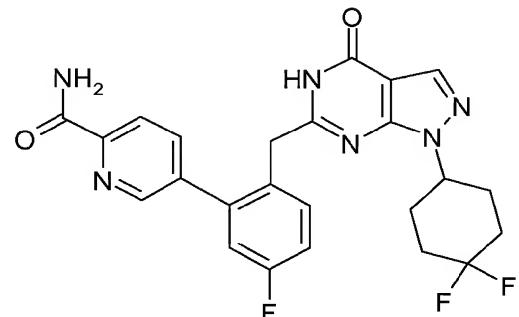
Example 60



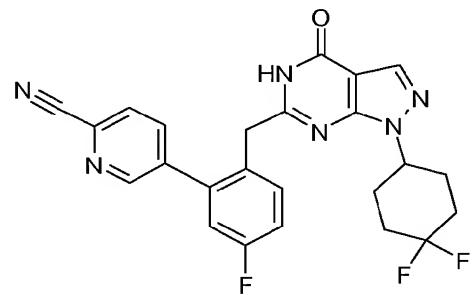
Example 61



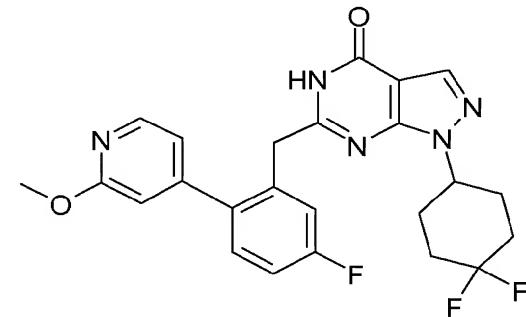
Example 62



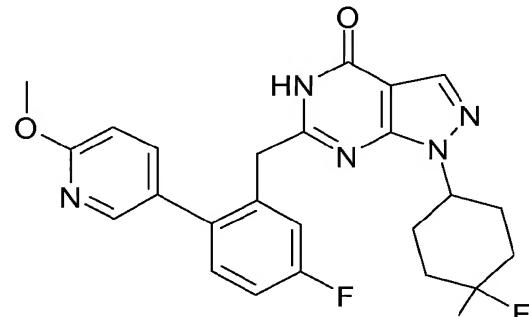
Example 63



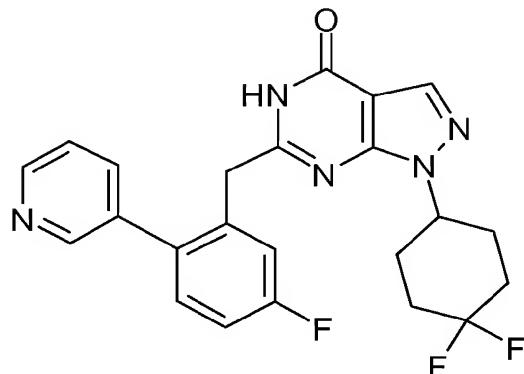
Example 64



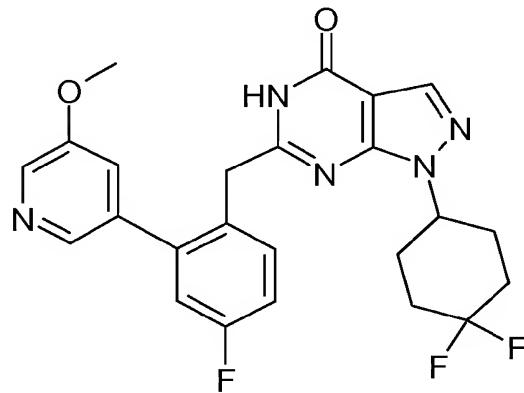
Example 65



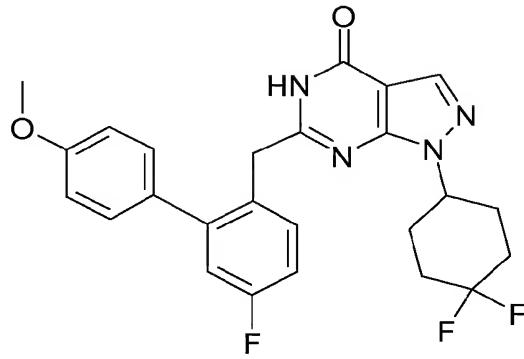
Example 66



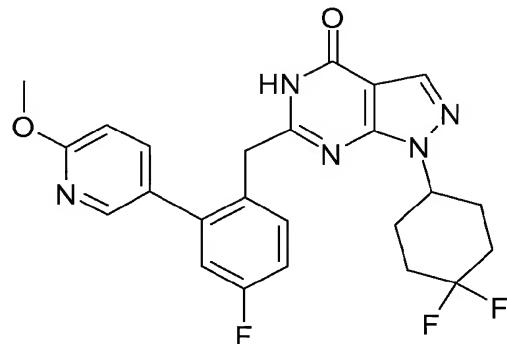
Example 67



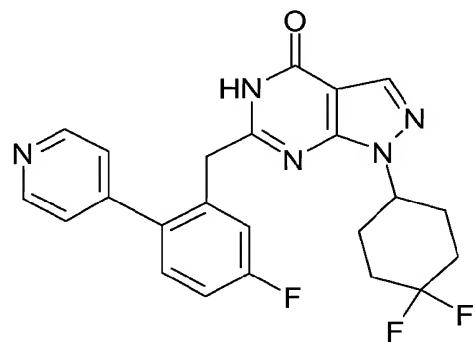
Example 68



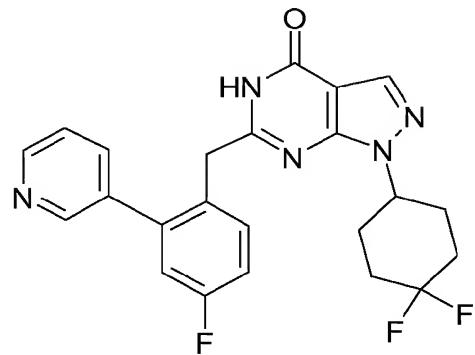
Example 69



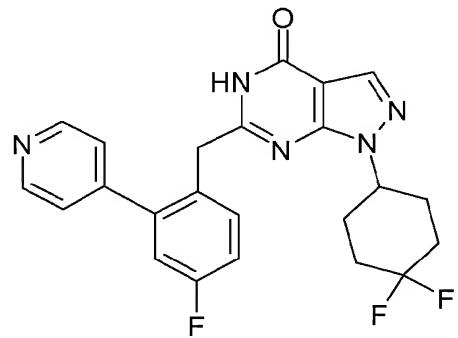
Example 70



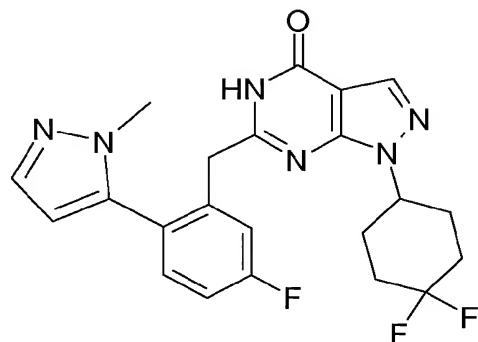
Example 71



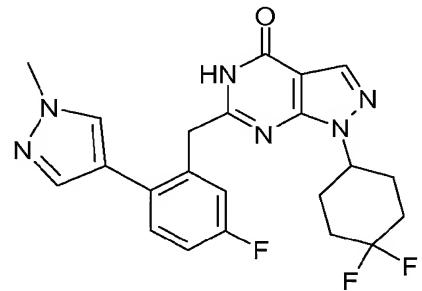
Example 72



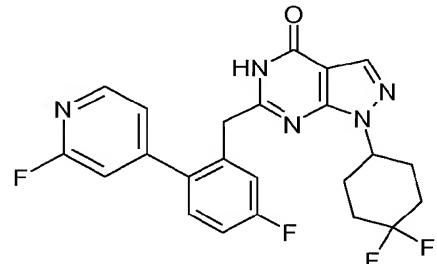
Example 72-2



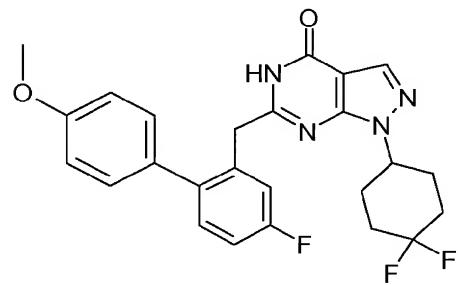
Example 72-3



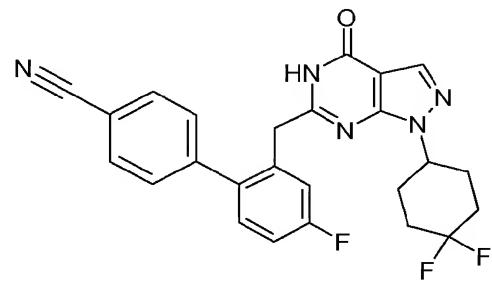
Example 72-4



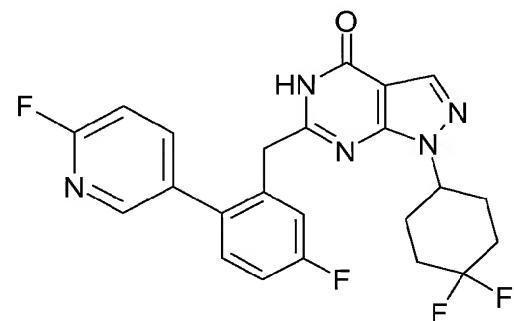
Example 72-5



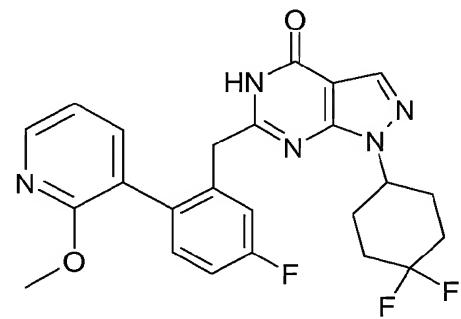
Example 72-6



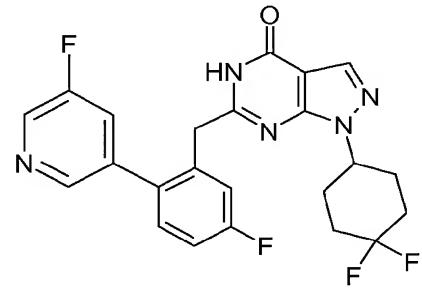
Example 72-7



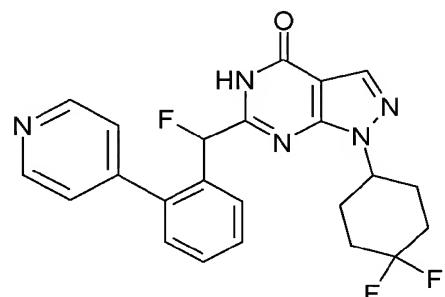
Example 72-8



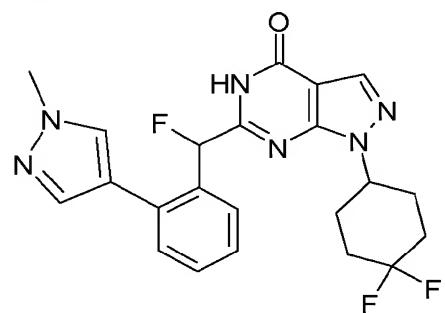
Example 72-9



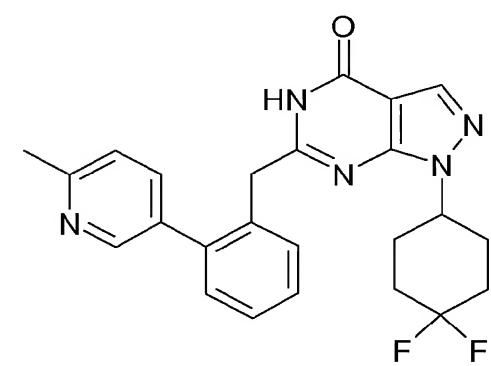
Example 72-10



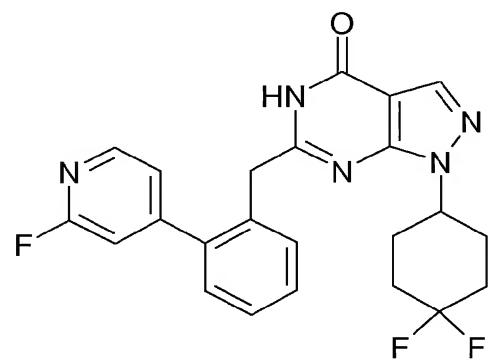
Example 72-11



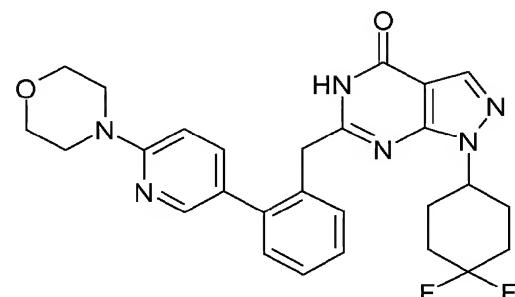
Example 73



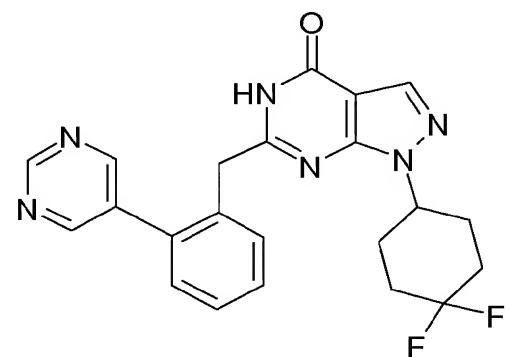
Example 74



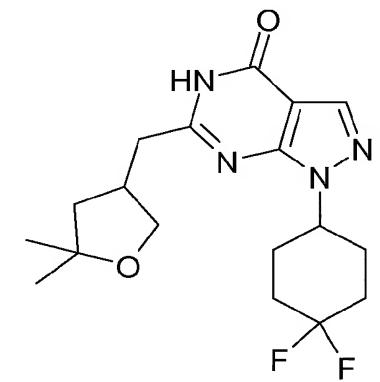
Example 75



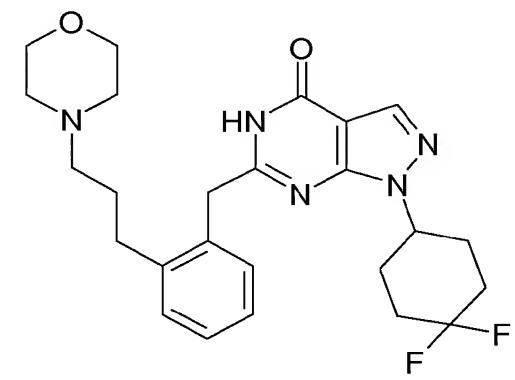
Example 76



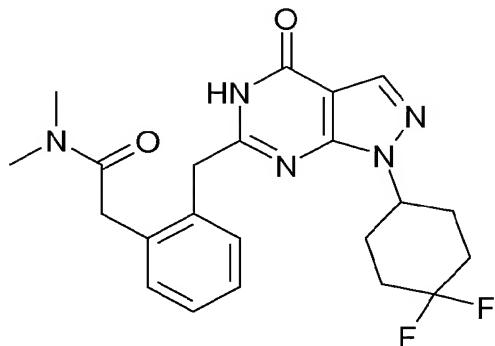
Example 77



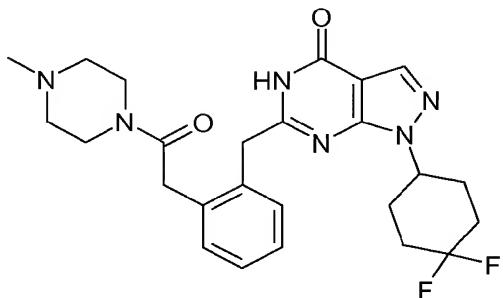
Example 78



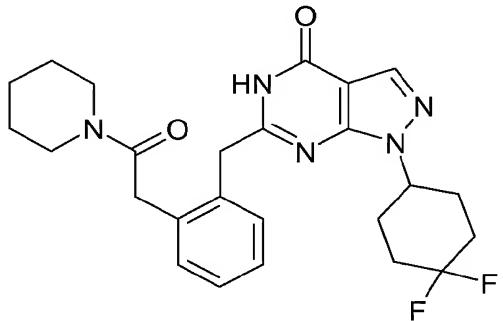
Example 79



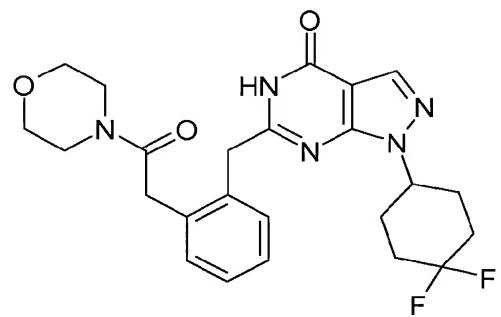
Example 80



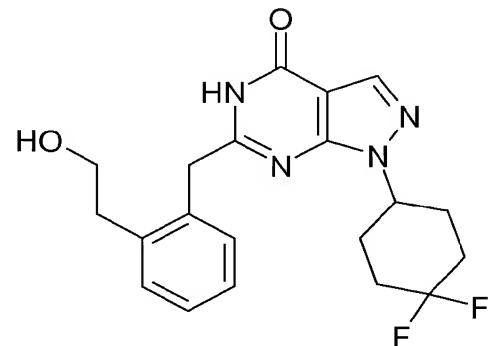
Example 81



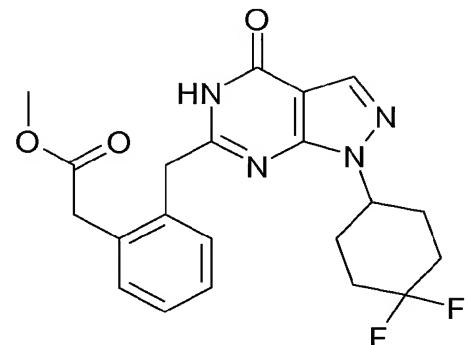
Example 82



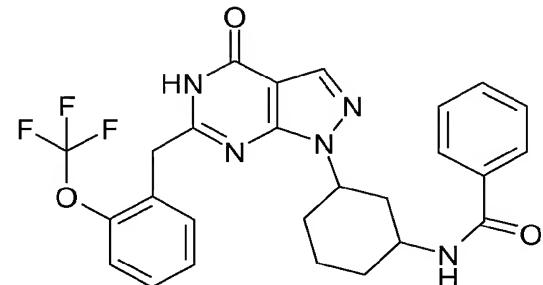
Example 83



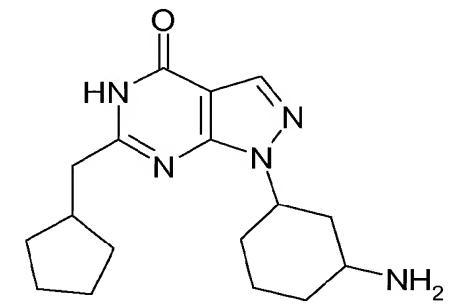
Example 84



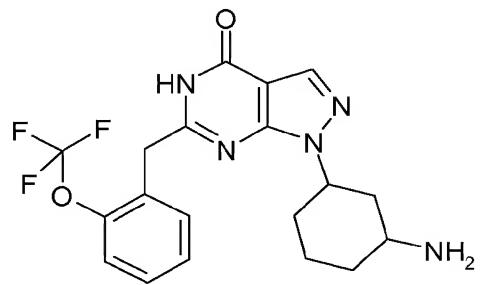
Example 85



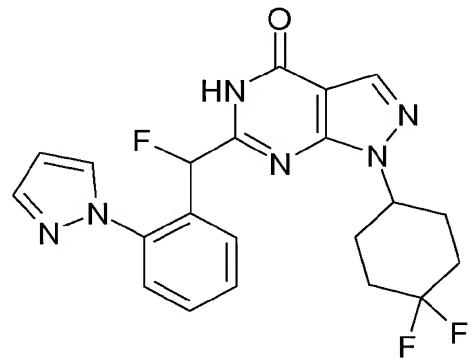
Example 86



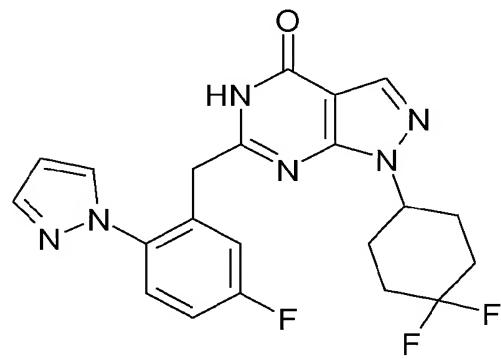
Example 87



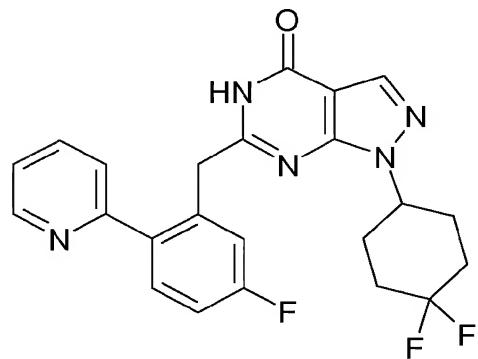
Example 88



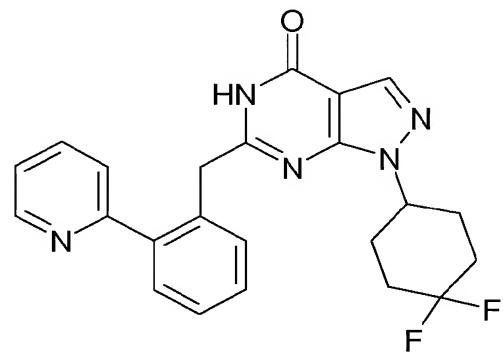
Example 89



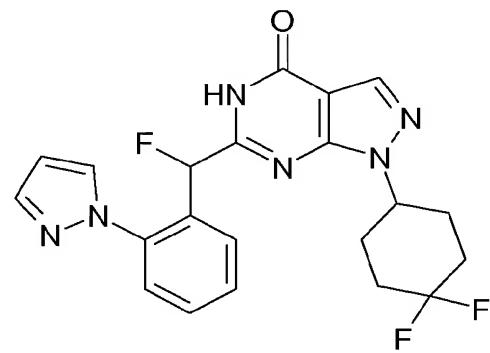
Example 90



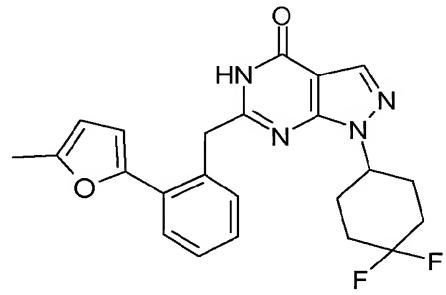
Example 91



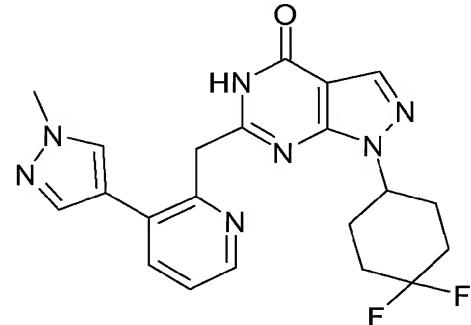
Example 92



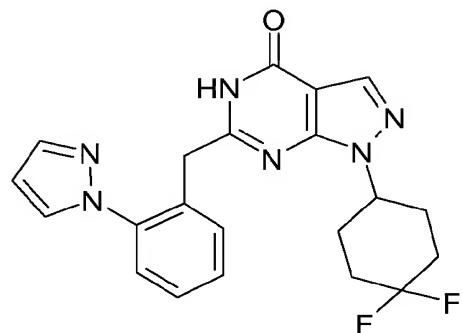
Example 93



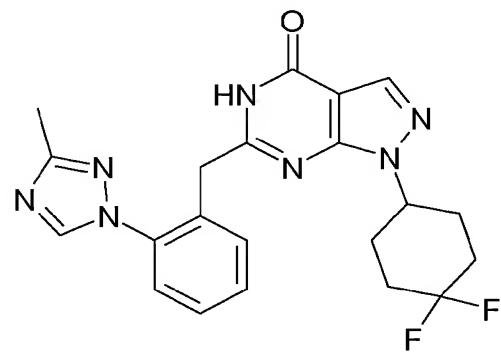
Example 94



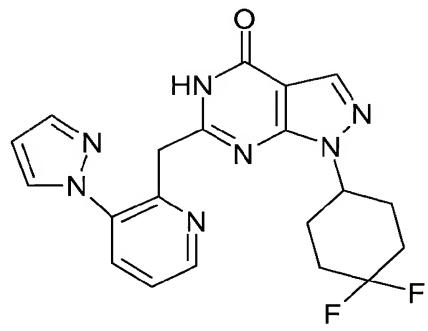
Example 95



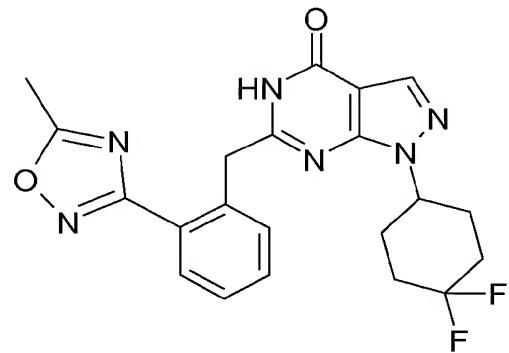
Example 95-1



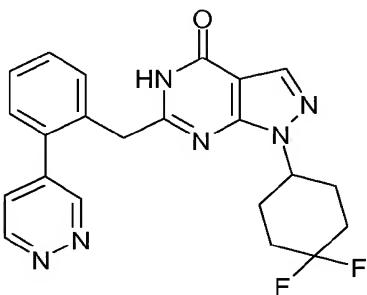
Example 96



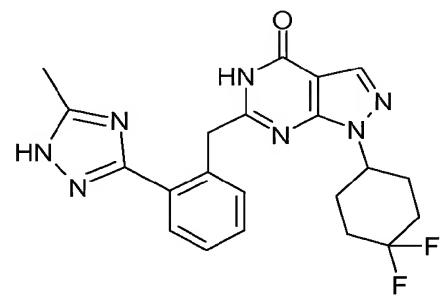
Example 97



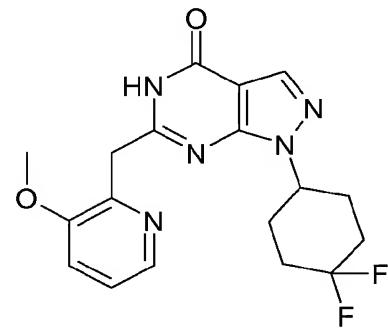
Example 98



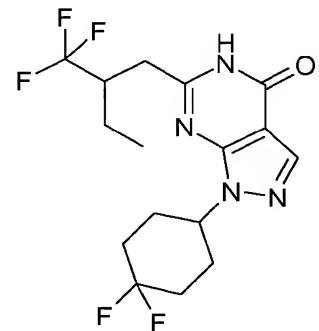
Example 99



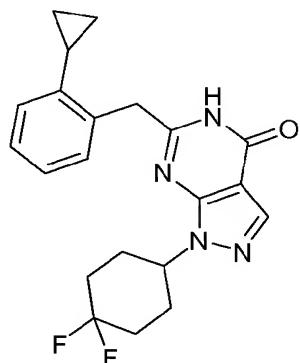
Example 100



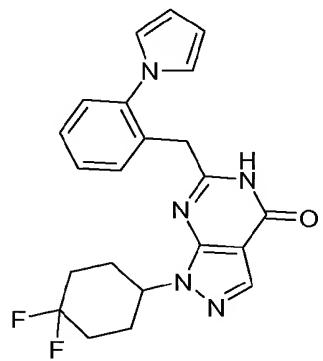
Examples 101 &amp; 102



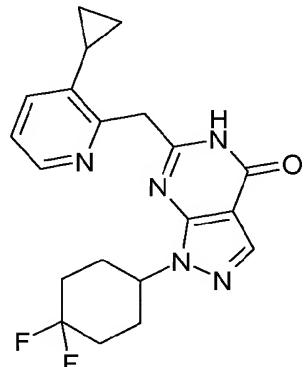
Example 103



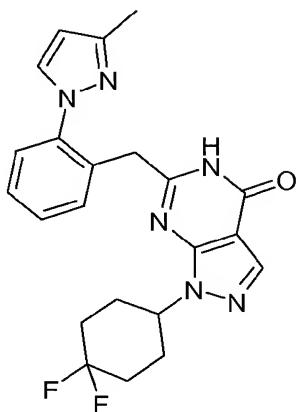
Example 104



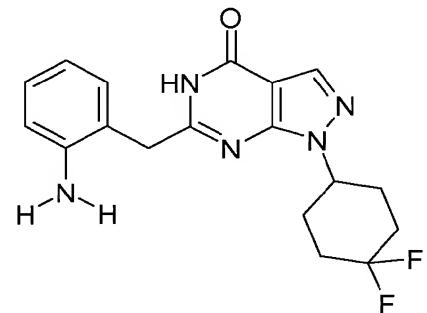
Example 105



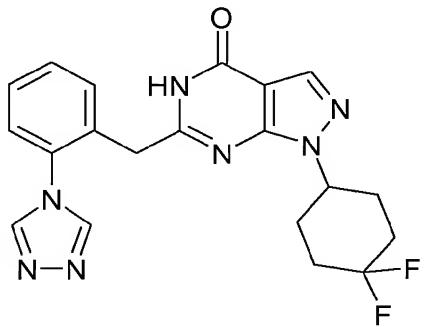
Example 106



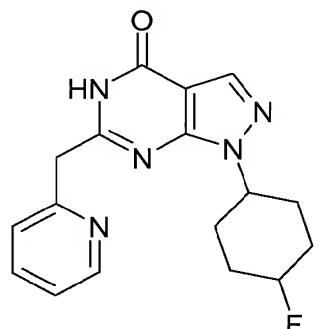
Example 107



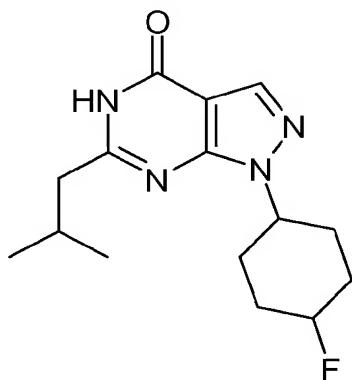
Example 108



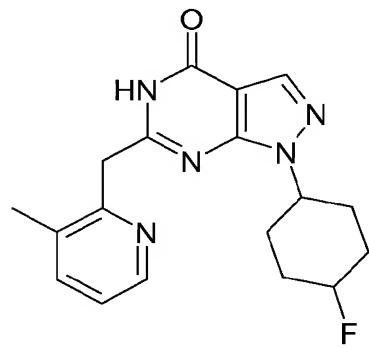
Example 109



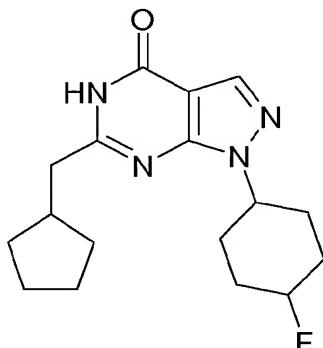
Example 112



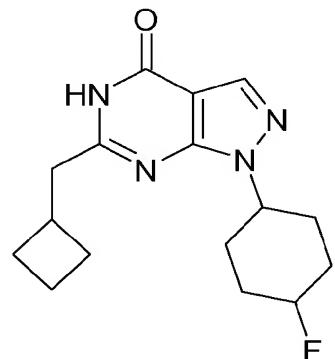
Example 110



Example 113



Example 111



Beside the neutral compounds without stereochemical properties another preferred embodiment of the invention are compounds as listed in the above table of preferred specific embodiments in the form of salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5

Another preferred embodiment of the invention are the stereochemical isomers of the compounds according to the one as listed in the above table of preferred specific embodiments and salts, preferably the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The compounds of preference according to the present invention may be structural part of a solvate form, in particular a hydrate form.

## USED TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

5

Terms not specifically defined herein should be given the meanings that would be given to them by a person skilled in the art in light of the disclosure and the context. Examples include that specific substituents or atoms are presented with their 1 or 2 letter code, like H for hydrogen, N for nitrogen, C for carbon, O for oxygen, S for sulphur and the like. As used in the specification and unless specified to the contrary, the following terms have the meaning indicated and the following conventions are adhered to.

10

In the groups, radicals, or moieties defined below, the number of carbon atoms is often specified preceding the group, for example, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl means an alkyl group or alkyl radical having 1 to 6 carbon atoms. In general, for groups comprising two or 15 more subgroups, the last named group is the radical attachment point, for example, "thioalkyl" means a monovalent radical of the formula HS-alkyl-. A hyphen may indicate a bond. Sometimes a term of a substituent starts or ends with a minus sign or hyphen, i.e. -. This sign emphasises the attachment point or bond of said

20

substituent to another part of the molecule. In cases such an information is not needed the hyphen may not be used. Unless otherwise specified below, conventional definitions of terms control and conventional stable atom valences are presumed and achieved in all formulas and groups.

25

In general, all "**tautomeric forms and isomeric forms and mixtures**", whether individual geometric isomers or optical isomers or racemic or non-racemic mixtures of isomers, of a chemical structure or compound are intended, unless the specific stereochemistry or isomeric form is specifically indicated in the compound name or structure.

30

The term "**substituted**" as used herein explicitly or implicitly, means that any one or more hydrogen(s) on the designated atom is replaced with a member of the indicated group of substituents, provided that the designated atom's normal valence is not

exceeded. The substitution shall result in a stable compound. "Stable" in this context preferably means a compound that from a pharmaceutical point of view is chemically and physically sufficiently stable in order to be used as an active pharmaceutical ingredient of a pharmaceutical composition.

5 If a substituent is not defined, it shall be hydrogen.

By the term "**optionally substituted**" is meant that either the corresponding group is substituted or is not.

10 The phrase "**pharmaceutically acceptable**" is employed herein to refer to those compounds, materials, compositions, and/or dosage forms which are, within the scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in contact with the tissues of human beings and animals without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic response, or other problem or complication, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio.

15 As used herein, "**pharmaceutically acceptable salt(s)**" refer to derivatives of the disclosed compounds wherein the parent compound is modified by making acid or base salts thereof. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts include, but are not limited to, mineral or organic acid salts of basic residues such as amines; alkali or  
20 organic salts of acidic residues such as carboxylic acids; and the like. The pharmaceutically acceptable salts include the conventional non-toxic salts or the quaternary ammonium salts of the parent compound formed, for example, from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, sulfamic acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid, and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic acid, propionic acid, succinic acid, glycolic acid, stearic acid, lactic acid, malic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, ascorbic acid, pamoic acid, maleic acid, hydroxymaleic acid, phenylacetic acid, glutamic acid, benzoic acid, salicylic acid, sulfanilic acid, 2-acetoxybenzoic acid, fumaric acid,  
25 toluenesulfonic acid, methanesulfonic acid, ethane disulfonic acid, oxalic acid, isothionic acid, and the like. As the compounds of the present invention may have both, acid as well as basic groups, those compounds may therefore be present as internal salts too.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the present invention can be synthesized from the parent compound which contains a basic or acidic moiety by conventional chemical methods. Generally, such salts can be prepared by reacting the free acid or base form of these compounds with a stoichiometric amount of the appropriate base or acid in water or in an organic solvent, or in a mixture of the two; generally, non-aqueous media like ether, ethyl acetate, ethanol, isopropanol, or acetonitrile are preferred.

“**Prodrugs**” are considered compounds that release an active parent drug of the present invention in vivo when such prodrug is administered to a mammalian subject. Prodrugs according to the present invention are prepared by modifying functional groups present in the compound in such a way that these modifications are retransformed to the original functional groups under physiological conditions. Prodrugs include compounds of the present invention wherein a hydroxy, amino, or sulphhydryl group is bound to any group that, when the prodrug of the present invention is administered to a mammalian subject, is retransformed to free said hydroxyl, amino, or sulphhydryl group. Examples of prodrugs include, but are not limited to, acetate, formate and benzoate derivatives of alcohol and amine functional groups in the compounds of the present invention.

20

“**Metabolites**” are considered as derivatives of the compounds according to the present invention that are formed in vivo. Active metabolites are such metabolites that cause a pharmacological effect. It will be appreciated that metabolites of the compounds according to the present inventions are subject to the present invention as well, in particular active metabolites.

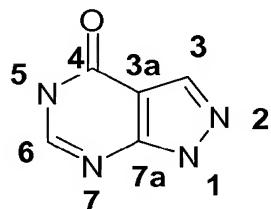
Some of the compounds may form “**solvates**”. For the purposes of the invention the term “solvates” refers to those forms of the compounds which form, in the solid or liquid state, a complex by coordination with solvent molecules. Hydrates are a specific form of solvates in which the coordination takes place with water.

30

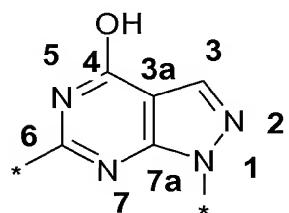
It will be evident that the atoms within the compounds according to the present invention may exist in form of different **isotopes**. Therefore specific isotopes are not mentioned individually, but are considered to be comprised by the definitions as used

herein. For example, the term hydrogen shall comprise deuterium as well or the genius as defined herein shall comprise compounds of the invention in which one atom is enriched by a specific isotope (isotopically labelled compound) etc.

5 “**Scaffold**”: The scaffold of the compounds according to the present invention is represented by the following core structure, the numeration of which is indicated in bold (pyrazolopyrimdin-4-one representation):

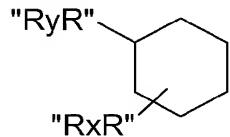


10 It will be evident for the skilled person in the art, that this scaffold can be described by its tautomeric “enol” form (enol-representation):



15 In the context of the present invention both structural representations of the scaffold shall be considered the subject of the present invention, even if only one of the two representatives is presented. It is believed that for the majority of compounds under ambient conditions and therewith under conditions which are the relevant conditions for a pharmaceutical composition comprising said compounds, the equilibrium of the tautomeric forms lies on the side of the pyrazolopyrimdin-4-one representation, which 20 therefore is the preferred presentation of the compounds of the present invention (pyrazolopyrimdin-4-one-derivatives or more precisely pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-4-one derivatives).

“**Bonds**”: If within a chemical formula of a ring system or a defined group a substituent is directly linked to an atom or a group like “RyR” in below formula this shall mean that the substituent is attached to the corresponding atom. If however 5 from another substituent like RxR a bond is not specifically linked to an atom of the ring system but drawn towards the centre of the ring or group this means that this substituent “RxR” may be linked to any meaningful atom of the ring system / group unless stated otherwise.



10

A hyphen ( - ) or a hyphen followed by an asterisk ( -\* ) stands for the bond through which a substituent is bound to the corresponding remaining part of the molecule / scaffold. In cases in that the hyphen alone does not indicate the attachment point(s) sufficiently clear, the asterisk is added to the hyphen in order to determine the point 15 of attachment of said bond with the corresponding main part of the molecule / scaffold.

In general, the bond to one of the herein defined heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl groups may be effected via a C atom or optionally an N atom.

20 The term “**aryl**” used in this application denotes a phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl, indenyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl or naphthyl group. This definition applies for the use of “**aryl**” in any context within the present description in the absence of a further definition.

25 The term “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**” denotes a saturated, branched or unbranched hydrocarbon group with 1 to n C atoms, wherein n is a figure selected from the group of 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10, preferably from the group of 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6, more preferably from the group of 2, 3, or 4. Examples of such groups include methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *iso*-propyl, butyl, *iso*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, *iso*-pentyl, *neo*-pentyl, *tert*-

pentyl, *n*-hexyl, *iso*-hexyl etc. As will be evident from the context, such **C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl** group optionally can be substituted.

This definition applies for the use of “**alkyl**” in any reasonable context within the present description in the absence of a further definition.

5 In cases in which the term “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**” is used in the middle of two other groups / substituents, like for example in “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl-O-**”, this means that the “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**”-moiety bridges said two other groups. In the present example it bridges the **C<sub>1-n</sub>-cycloalkyl** with the oxygen like in “cyclopropyl-methyl-oxy-”. It will be evident, that in such cases “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**” has the meaning of a “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkylene**” spacer like

10 methylene, ethylene etc. The groups that are bridged by “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**” may be bound to “**C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl**” at any position thereof. Preferably the right hand group is located at the distal right hand end of the alkyl group (the C-atom numbered n, the n-position) and the left hand group at the distal left hand side of the alkyl group (the C-atom numbered 1, the 1-position). The same applies for other substituents.

15

The term “**C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkenyl**” denotes a branched or unbranched hydrocarbon group with 2 to n C atoms and at least one C=C group (i.e. carbon – carbon double bond), wherein n preferably has a value selected from the group of 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8, more preferably 3, 4, 5, or 6, more preferably 3 or 4. Examples of such groups include

20 ethenyl, 1-propenyl, 2-propenyl, *iso*-propenyl, 1-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 2-methyl-1-propenyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-pentenyl, 4-pentenyl, 3-methyl-2-butenyl, 1-hexenyl, 2-hexenyl, 3-hexenyl, 4-hexenyl, 5-hexenyl etc. As will be evident from the context, such **C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkenyl** group optionally can be substituted.

25 This definition applies for the use of “**alkenyl**” in any reasonable context within the present description in the absence of a further definition if no other definition.

In cases in which the term “**C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkenyl**” is used in the middle of two other groups / substituents, the analogue definition as for **C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl** applies.

30 The term “**C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkynyl**” denotes a branched or unbranched hydrocarbon group with 2 to n C atoms and at least one C≡C group (i.e. a carbon-carbon triple bond), wherein n preferably has a value selected from the group of 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8, more

preferably 3, 4, 5, or 6, more preferably 3 or 4. Examples of such groups include ethynyl, 1-propynyl, 2-propynyl, 1-butynyl, 2-butynyl, 3-butynyl, 1-pentynyl, 2-pentynyl, 3-pentynyl, 4-pentynyl, 1-hexynyl, 2-hexynyl, 3-hexynyl, 4-hexynyl, 5-hexynyl etc. As will be evident from the context, such **C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkynyl** group optionally can be substituted.

5 This definition applies for the use “**alkynyl**” in any reasonable context within the present description in the absence of a further definition.

In cases in which the term “**C<sub>2-n</sub>-alkynyl**” is used in the middle of two other groups / substituents, the analogue definition as for **C<sub>1-n</sub>-alkyl** applies.

10

The term “**C<sub>3-n</sub>-cycloalkyl**” denotes a saturated monocyclic group with 3 to n C ring atoms with no heteroatoms within the ringsystem. n preferably has a value of 4 to 8 (= 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8), more preferably 4 to 7, more preferably such **C<sub>3-n</sub>-cycloalkyl** is 5 or 6 membered. Examples of such groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl etc.. This definition applies for “**cycloalkyl**” in any reasonable context within the present description in the absence of a further definition.

15

The term “**C<sub>4-n</sub>-cycloalkenyl**” denotes an unsaturated, preferably a partly unsaturated, but in any case a not aromatic monocyclic group with 4 to n C ring atoms with no heteroatoms within the ringsystem. n preferably has a value of 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8, more preferably 4, 5, 6 or 7, more preferably **C<sub>4-n</sub>-cycloalkenyl** is 5 or 6 membered. Examples of such groups include cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl etc.. There may be one double bond in case of 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 membered ring systems, two double bonds in 5, 6, 7 and 8 membered ring systems, three double bonds in 7 and 8 membered ring systems and four double bonds in a 8 membered group. This definition applies for the use “**cycloalkenyl**” in any context within the present description in the absence of a further definition.

20 The term “**halogen**” denotes an atom selected from F, Cl, Br, and I.

25

The term “**heteroaryl**” used in this application denotes a heterocyclic, mono- or bicyclic aromatic ring system which includes within the ring system itself in addition to at least one C atom one or more heteroatom(s) independently selected from N, O,

and/or S. A monocyclic ring system preferably consists of 5 to 6 ring members, a bicyclic ring system preferably consists of 8 to 10 ring members. Preferred are heteroaryls with up to 3 heteroatoms, more preferred up to 2 heteroatoms, more preferred with 1 heteroatom. Preferred heteroatom is N. Examples of such moieties

5 are benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzo[1,4]-oxazinyl, benzoxazol-2-onyl, benzofuranyl, benzoisothiazolyl, 1,3-benzodioxolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxadiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, chromanyl, chromenyl, chromonyl, cinnolinyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[1,4]dioxinyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl, 3,4-dihydrobenzo[1,4]oxazinyl, 2,3-dihydroindolyl, 1,3-dihydroisobenzofuranyl, 2,3-dihydroisoindolyl, 6,7-dihydropyrrolizinyl, dihydroquinolin-2-onyl, dihydroquinolin-4-onyl, furanyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyrazinyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridyl, imidazolyl, imidazopyridyl, imidazo[4,5-*d*]thiazolyl, indazolyl, indolizinyl, indolyl, isobenzofuranyl, isobenzothienyl, isochromanyl, isochromenyl, isoindoyl, isoquinolin-2-onyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, naphthyridinyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazoyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazoyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazoyl, oxazolopyridyl, oxazolyl, 2-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzimidazolyl, 2-oxo-2,3-dihydroindolyl, 1-oxoindanyl, phthalazinyl, pteridinyl, purinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridyl, pyrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyridopyrimidinyl, pyridyl (pyridinyl), pyridyl-*N*-oxide, pyrimidinyl, pyrimidopyrimidinyl, pyrrolopyridyl, pyrrolopyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, 20 quinazolinyl, quinolin-4-onyl, quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, thiazolyl, thieno[2,3-*d*]imidazolyl, thieno[3,2-*b*]pyrrolyl, thieno[3,2-*b*]thiophenyl, thienyl, triazinyl, or triazolyl.

25 Preferred heteroaryl groups are furanyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, thienyl, and thiazolyl.

More preferred heteroaryl groups are oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and pyridyl, more preferred is pyrazolyl and pyridyl.

30

The definition pyrazole includes the isomers 1H-, 3H- and 4H-pyrazole. Preferably pyrazolyl denotes 1H-pyrazolyl.

The definition imidazole includes the isomers 1H-, 2H- and 4H-imidazole. A preferred definition of imidazolyl is 1H-imidazolyl.

The definition triazole includes the isomers 1H-, 3H- and 4H-[1,2,4]-triazole as well

5 as 1H-, 2H- and 4H-[1,2,3]-triazole. The definition triazolyl therefore includes 1H-[1,2,4]-triazol-1-, -3- and -5-yl, 3H-[1,2,4]-triazol-3- and -5-yl, 4H-[1,2,4]-triazol-3-, -4- and -5-yl, 1H-[1,2,3]-triazol-1-, -4- and -5-yl, 2H-[1,2,3]-triazol-2-, -4- and -5-yl as well as 4H-[1,2,3]-triazol-4- and -5-yl.

10 The term tetrazole includes the isomers 1H-, 2H- and 5H-tetrazole. The definition tetrazolyl therefore includes 1H-tetrazol-1- and -5-yl, 2H-tetrazol-2- and -5-yl and 5H-tetrazol-5-yl.

15 The definition indole includes the isomers 1H- and 3H-indole. The term indolyl

preferably denotes 1H-indol-1-yl.

The term isoindole includes the isomers 1H- and 2H-isoindole.

This definition applies for “**heteraryl**” in any reasonable context within the present

20 description in the absence of a further definition, in particular with regard to the preferred and most preferred representatives of the above definition.

25 The term “**heterocycloalkyl**” within the context of the present invention denotes a saturated 3 to 8 membered, preferably 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring system or a 5-12 membered bicyclic ring system, which include 1, 2, 3 or 4 heteroatoms, selected from N, O, and/or S. Preferred are 1, 2, or 3 heteroatoms.

The preferred number of carbon atoms is 3 to 8 with 1, 2, 3 or 4 heteroatoms selected from N, O, and/or S. Such heterocycloalkyl groups are addressed as C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl.

30 Preferred are saturated heterocycloalkyl rings with 5, 6, 7 or 8 ring atoms, of which 1 or 2 are heteroatoms and the remaining are C-atoms.

Wherever C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl- substituents are mentioned, the preferred embodiments thereof are 5-, 6-, or 7-membered cycles, more preferably

monocycles. They include 1, 2, 3, or 4 heteroatoms, selected from N, O, and/or S, whereby 1 or 2 such heteroatoms are preferred, more preferably 1 such heteroatom. In case of a nitrogen containing heterocycloalkyl ring system, the nitrogen may be the atom by which the heterocycloalkyl ring is attached to the main body of the

5 compound in total. In another embodiment the nitrogen may saturate its third valence (two binding sites are occupied within the ring system) by binding another radical. Preferred example for heterocycloalkyl include morpholinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, thiomorpholinyl, oxathianyl, dithianyl, dioxanyl, pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuran, dioxolanyl, oxathiolanyl, imidazolidinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, pyrrolinyl, 10 tetrahydrothienyl, oxazolidinyl, homopiperazinyl, homopiperidinyl, homomorpholinyl, homothiomorpholinyl, azetidinyl, 1,3-diazacyclohexyl or pyrazolidinyl group.

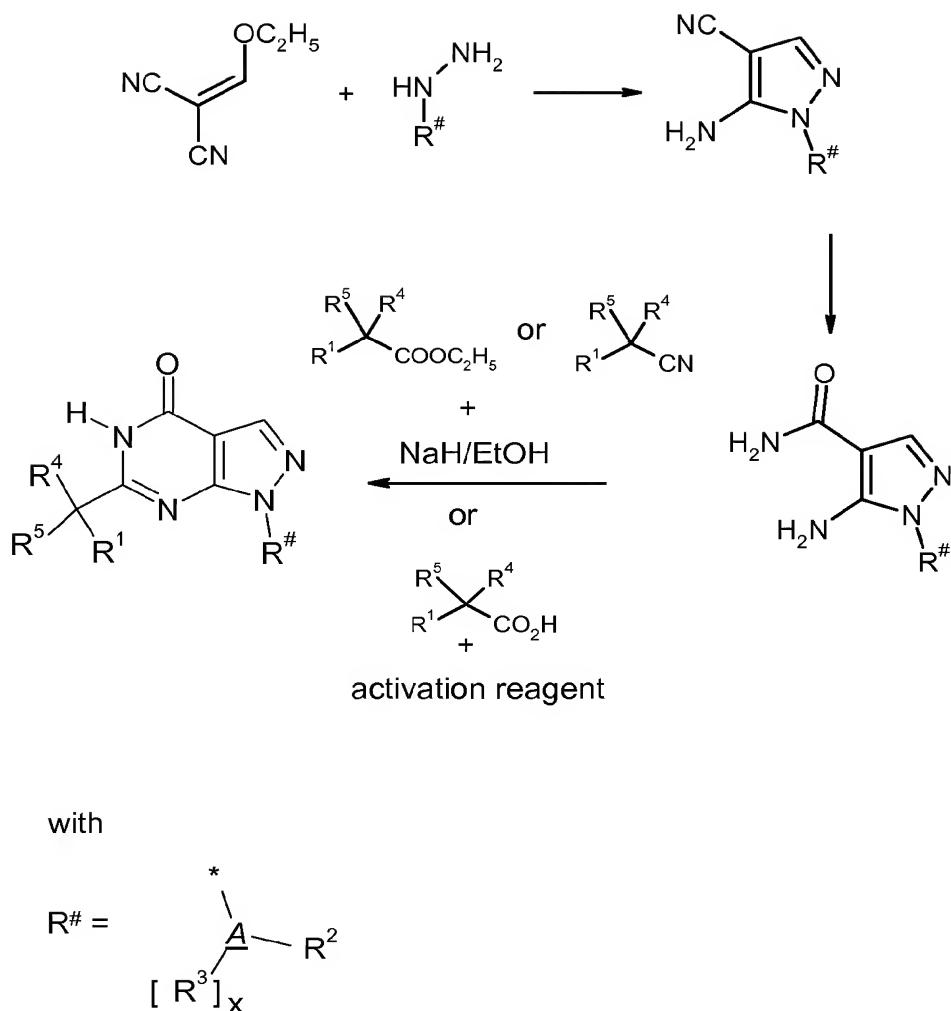
This definition applies for "**heterocycloalkyl**" in any reasonable context within the present description in the absence of a further specific definition.

15

The term "**oxo**" denotes an oxygen atom as substituent that is bonded by a double bond, preferably it is bonded to a C-atom. In case oxo is used as a substituent, the oxo formally replaces two hydrogen atoms of the corresponding C-atom of the unsubstituted 20 compound.

The following schemes shall illustrate a process to manufacture the compounds of the present invention by way of example:

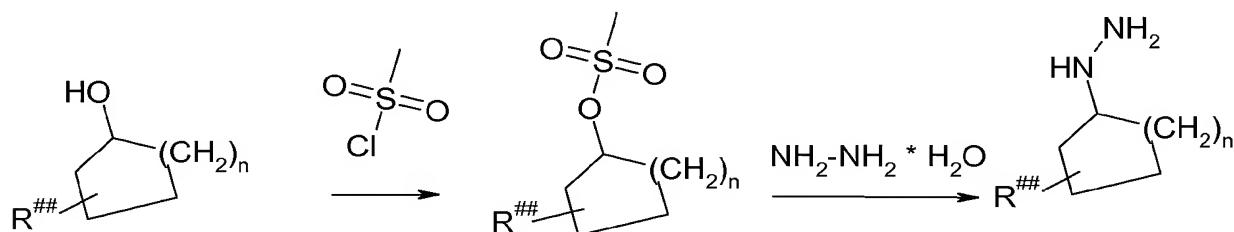
Scheme 1



Scheme 1: In a first step 2-ethoxymethylene-malononitrile is condensed with mono-substituted hydrazines by heating in an appropriate solvent like ethanol in the presence of a base (e.g. triethylamine) to form 5-amino-1H-pyrazole-4-carbonitriles. These compounds are converted in a second step to the corresponding amides, e.g. by treatment of an ethanolic solution with ammonia (25 % in water) and hydrogen peroxide (35 % in water). In a third step, heating with carboxylic esters under basic conditions (e.g. sodium hydride in ethanol) or carboxylic acids with an activation reagent (e.g. polyphosphoric acid) leads to pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-4-ones as final products [cf., for example, A. Miyashita *et al.*, *Heterocycles* **1990**, *31*, 1309ff].

The mono-substituted hydrazine derivatives, that are used in step 1 of scheme 1 can be prepared either by nucleophilic displacement on the corresponding mesylate derivative (scheme 2a) or by reduction of the hydrazone intermediate as depicted in scheme 2b [cf., for example, J.W. Timberlake *et al.*, "Chemistry of Hydrazo-, Azo-, and Azoxy Groups"; Patai, S., Ed.; 1975, Chapter 4; S. C. Hung *et al.*, *Journal of organic Chemistry* 1981, 46, 5413-5414].

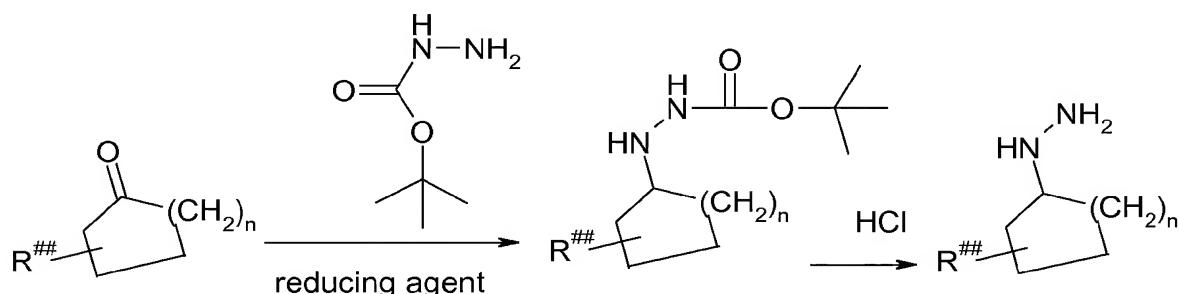
5

**Scheme 2a**

R## = R<sup>2</sup> and optionally R<sup>3</sup>

n = 1, 2, 3

10

**Scheme 2b**

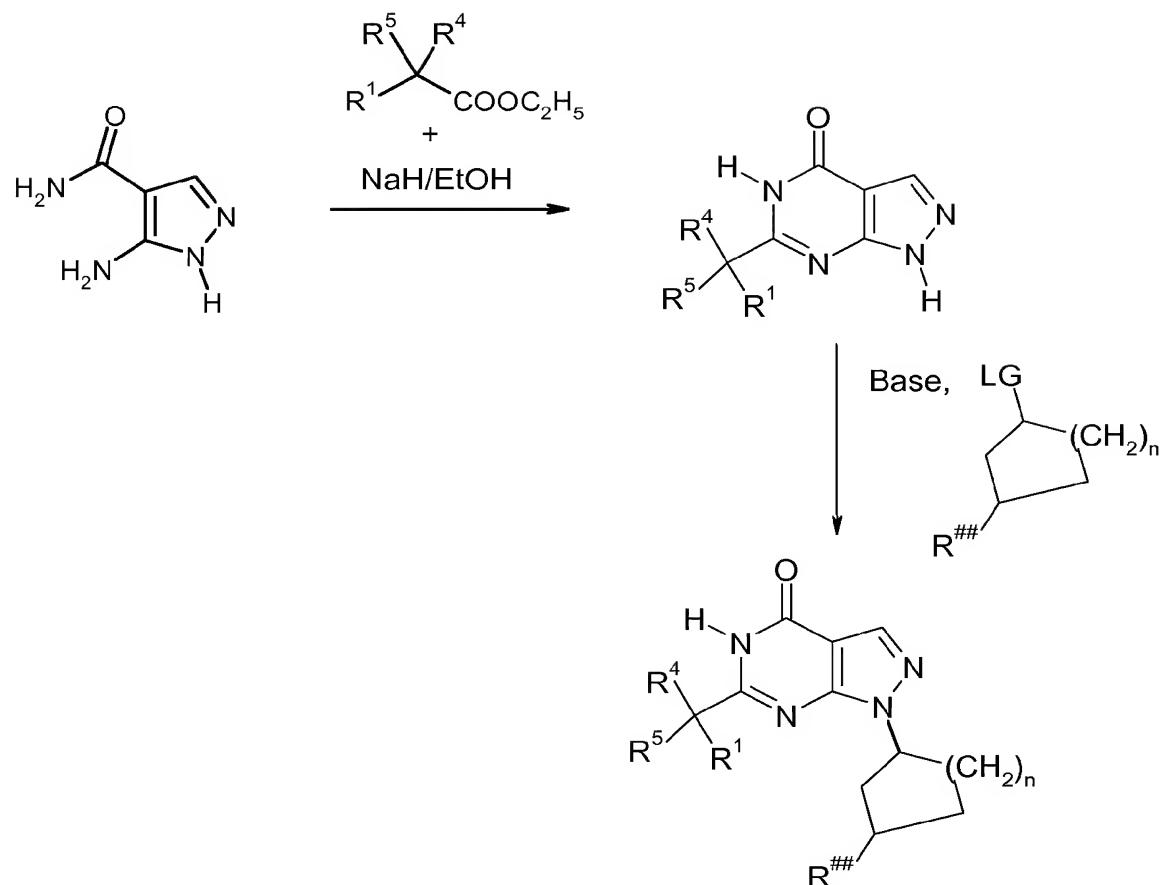
R## = R<sup>2</sup> and optionally R<sup>3</sup>

n = 1, 2, 3

Scheme 3 illustrates an alternative method to prepare the final compounds: in these exemplified manufacturing method 5-amino-1H-pyrazole-4-carboxylic acid amides are condensed in a first step with an appropriate ester derivative followed in a second step by alkylation with suitable electrophiles.

15

Scheme 3



$R^{##} = R^2$  or  $R^3$

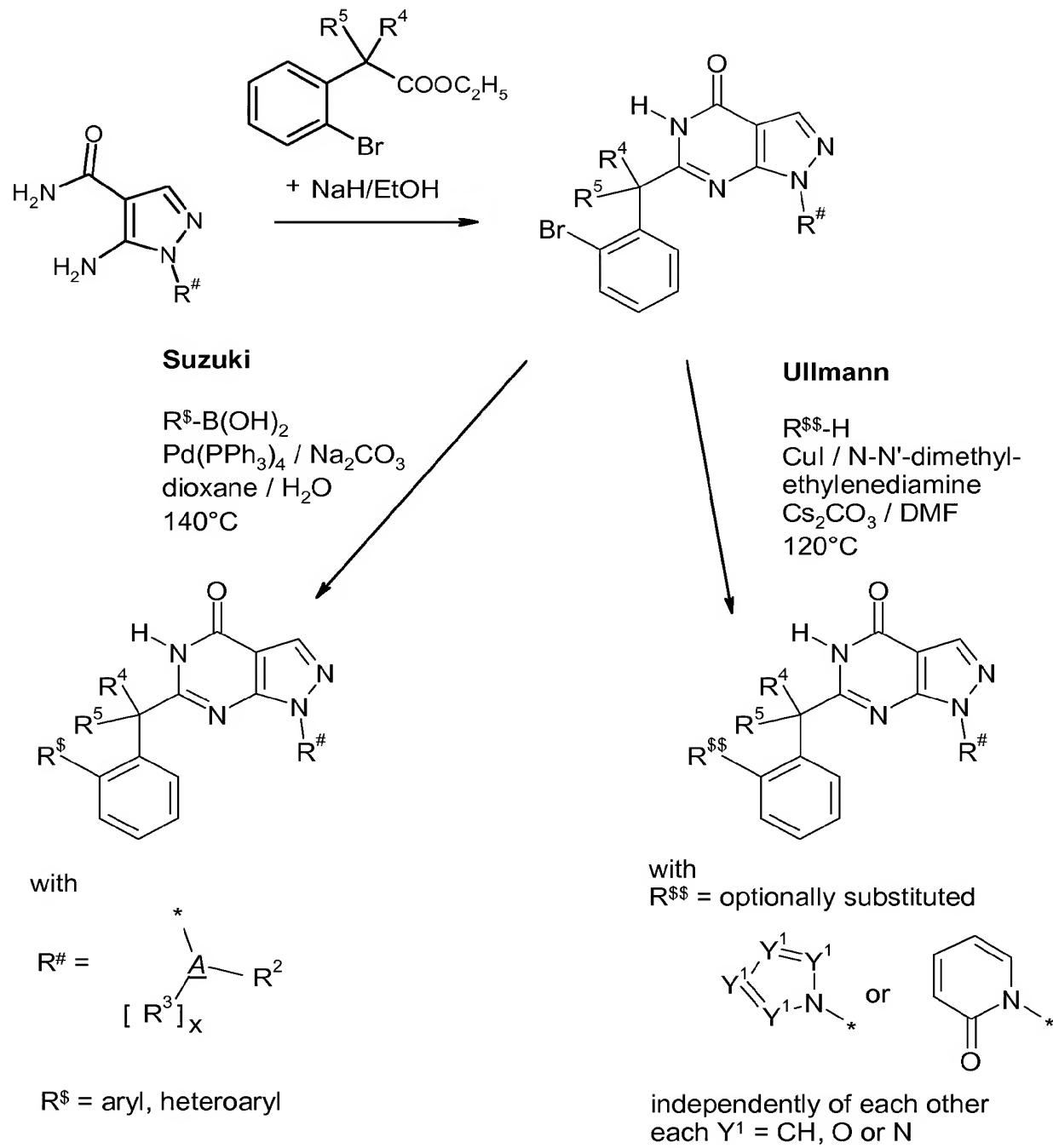
$LG = Br^-, Cl^-, I^-, CH_3-SO_2-O^-, p$ -toluenesulphonyl-

$n = 1, 2$

Base =  $N(C_2H_5)_3$ ,  $KOtBu$ ,  $NaH$

5 Scheme 4 illustrates alternative methods to prepare the final compounds: in the exemplified manufacturing methods 5-amino-1H-pyrazole-4-carboxylic acid amides are condensed in a first step with (2-bromo-phenyl)-acetic acid ester derivatives followed in a second step by substitution of the bromine atom by an aromatic or heteroaromatic residue e.g. using Suzuki or Ullmann type reaction conditions.

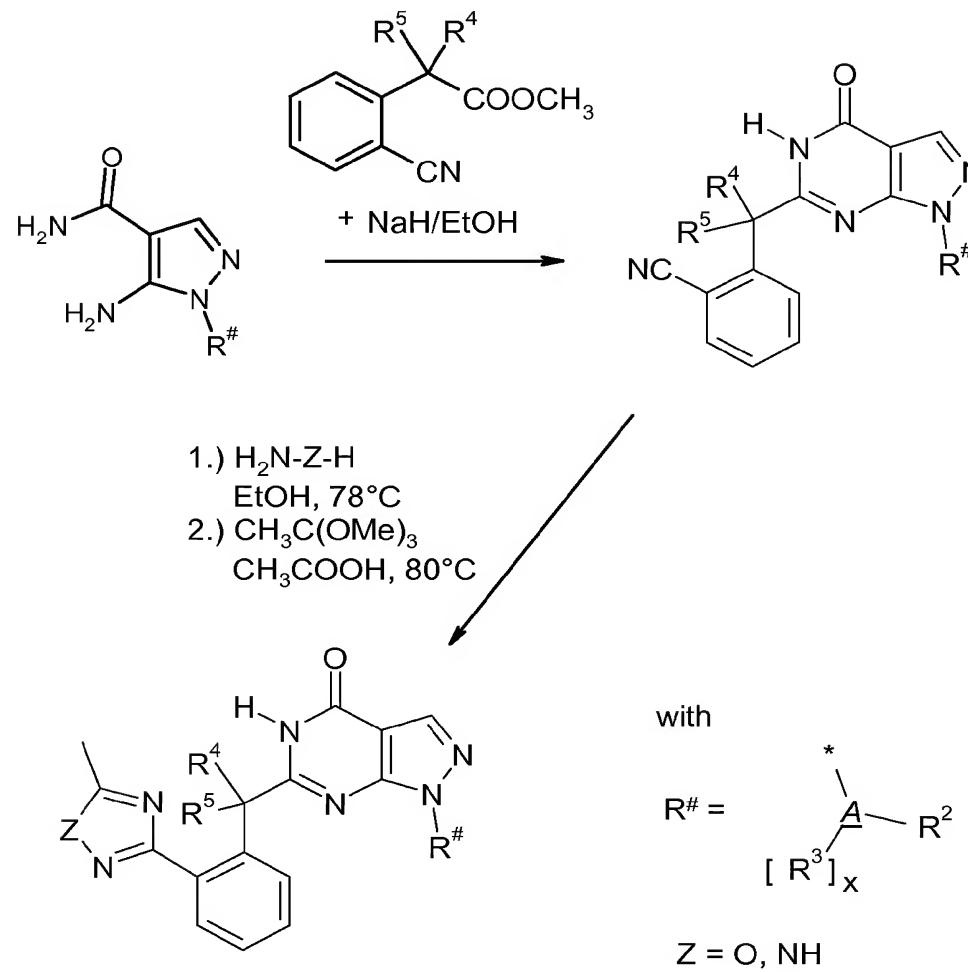
Scheme 4



5 Scheme 5 illustrates an alternative method to prepare the final compounds: in the exemplified manufacturing method 5-amino-1H-pyrazole-4-carboxylic acid amides are condensed in a first step with (2-cyano-phenyl)-acetic acid ester derivatives followed in

a second step by transformation of the nitrile group into a 5-membered heteroaromatic group.

**Scheme 5**



5

Further alternative processes for preparing pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-4-ones are known in the art and can likewise be employed for synthesizing the compounds of the invention (see, for example: P. Schmidt *et al.*, *Helvetica Chimica Acta* **1962**, 189, 1620ff.).

10

Further information also can be found in WO04099210 (in particular page 9, last paragraph to page 14, line 8, incorporated by reference).

The compounds of the invention show a valuable range of pharmacological effects which could not have been predicted. They are characterised in particular by inhibition of PDE9A.

Preferably the compounds according to the present invention show a high selectivity

5 profile in view of inhibiting or modulating specific members within the PDE9 family or other PDE families, with a clear preference (selectivity) towards PDE9A inhibition.

The compounds of the present invention are supposed to show a favourable safety profile for the purpose of treatment.

The compounds of the present invention are supposed to show a favourable profile

10 with respect to metabolic stability over a certain period of time for the purpose of treatment.

The compounds of the present invention are supposed to show a favourable profile with respect to bioavailability for the purpose of treatment.

## 15 **METHOD OF TREATMENT**

The present invention refers to compounds, which are considered effective and selective inhibitors of phosphodiesterase 9A and can be used for the development of medicaments. Such medicaments shall preferably be used for the treatment of diseases in which the inhibition of PDE9A can evolve a therapeutic, prophylactic or

20 disease modifying effect. Preferably the medicaments shall be used to improve perception, concentration, cognition, learning or memory, like those occurring in particular in situations/diseases/syndromes such as mild cognitive impairment, age-associated learning and memory impairments, age-associated memory losses, vascular dementia, craniocerebral trauma, stroke, dementia occurring after strokes

25 (post stroke dementia), post-traumatic dementia, general concentration impairments, concentration impairments in children with learning and memory problems, Alzheimer's disease, Lewy body dementia, dementia with degeneration of the frontal lobes, including Pick's syndrome, Parkinson's disease, progressive nuclear palsy, dementia with corticobasal degeneration, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS),

Huntington's disease, multiple sclerosis, thalamic degeneration, Creutzfeld-Jacob dementia, HIV dementia, schizophrenia with dementia or Korsakoff's psychosis.

Another aspect of the present invention concerns the treatment of a disease which is  
5 accessible by PDE9A modulation, in particular sleep disorders like insomnia or narcolepsy, bipolar disorder, metabolic syndrome, obesity, diabetes mellitus, including type 1 or type 2 diabetes, hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, impaired glucose tolerance, or a disease of the testes, brain, small intestine, skeletal muscle, heart, lung, thymus or spleen.

10

Thus the medical aspect of the present invention can be summarised in that it is considered that a compound according to any of the genius embodiments of the invention as outlined herein or a compound selected from the group of the specifically disclosed final compounds of the examples is used as a medicament.

15 Such a medicament preferably is for the treatment of a CNS disease.

In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment of a CNS disease, the treatment of which is accessible by the inhibition of PDE9.

In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment of a disease that is accessible by the inhibition of PDE9.

20 In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment, amelioration and / or prevention of cognitive impairment being related to perception, concentration, cognition, learning or memory.

In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment amelioration and / or prevention of cognitive impairment being related to age-associated learning and

25 memory impairments, age-associated memory losses, vascular dementia, craniocerebral trauma, stroke, dementia occurring after strokes (post stroke dementia), post-traumatic dementia, general concentration impairments, concentration impairments in children with learning and memory problems, Alzheimer's disease, Lewy body dementia, dementia with degeneration of the frontal lobes, including Pick's syndrome, Parkinson's disease, progressive nuclear palsy, dementia with corticobasal degeneration, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS),

Huntington's disease, multiple sclerosis, thalamic degeneration, Creutzfeld-Jacob dementia, HIV dementia, schizophrenia with dementia or Korsakoff's psychosis.

In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

In an alternative use, the medicament is for the treatment of sleep disorders, bipolar

5 disorder, metabolic syndrome, obesity, diabetes mellitus, hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, impaired glucose tolerance, or a disease of the testes, brain, small intestine, skeletal muscle, heart, lung, thymus or spleen.

## **PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS**

10 Medicaments for administration comprise a compound according to the present invention in a therapeutically effective amount. By "therapeutically effective amount" it is meant that if the medicament is applied via the appropriate regimen adapted to the patient's condition, the amount of said compound of formula (I) will be sufficient to effectively treat, to prevent or to decelerate the progression of the corresponding

15 disease, or otherwise to ameliorate the estate of a patient suffering from such a disease. It may be the case that the "therapeutically effective amount" in a mono-therapy will differ from the "therapeutically effective amount" in a combination therapy with another medicament.

20 The dose range of the compounds of general formula (I) applicable per day is usually from 0.1 to 5000 mg, preferably 0.1 to 1000 mg, preferably from 2 to 500 mg, more preferably from 5 to 250 mg, most preferably from 10 to 100 mg. A dosage unit (e.g. a tablet) preferably contains between 2 and 250 mg, particularly preferably between 10 and 100 mg of the compounds according to the invention.

25 The actual pharmaceutically effective amount or therapeutic dosage will of course depend on factors known by those skilled in the art such as age, weight, gender or other condition of the patient, route of administration, severity of disease, and the like.

30 The compounds according to the invention may be administered by oral, parenteral (intravenous, intramuscular etc.), intranasal, sublingual, inhalative, intrathecal, topical or rectal route. Suitable preparations for administering the compounds according to

the present invention include for example patches, tablets, capsules, pills, pellets, dragees, powders, troches, suppositories, liquid preparations such as solutions, suspensions, emulsions, drops, syrups, elixirs, or gaseous preparations such as aerosols, sprays and the like. The content of the pharmaceutically active

5 compound(s) should be in the range from 0.05 to 90 wt.-%, preferably 0.1 to 50 wt.-% of the composition as a whole. Suitable tablets may be obtained, for example, by mixing the active substance(s) with known excipients, for example inert diluents such as calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or lactose, disintegrants such as corn starch or alginic acid, binders such as starch or gelatine, lubricants such as  
10 magnesium stearate or talc and/or agents for delaying release, such as carboxymethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, or polyvinyl acetate. The tablets may also comprise several layers.

Coated tablets may be prepared accordingly by coating cores produced analogously

15 to the tablets with substances normally used for tablet coatings, for example collidone or shellac, gum arabic, talc, titanium dioxide or sugar. To achieve delayed release or prevent incompatibilities the core may also consist of a number of layers. Similarly the tablet coating may consist of a number of layers to achieve delayed release, possibly using the excipients mentioned above for the tablets.

20 Syrups or elixirs containing the active substances or combinations thereof according to the invention may additionally contain a sweetener such as saccharine, cyclamate, glycerol or sugar and a flavour enhancer, e.g. a flavouring such as vanillin or orange extract. They may also contain suspension adjuvants or thickeners such as sodium  
25 carboxymethyl cellulose, wetting agents such as, for example, condensation products of fatty alcohols with ethylene oxide, or preservatives such as p-hydroxybenzoates.

Solutions are prepared in the usual way, e.g. with the addition of isotonic agents, preservatives such as p-hydroxybenzoates or stabilisers such as alkali metal salts of

30 ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, optionally using emulsifiers and/or dispersants, while if water is used as diluent, for example, organic solvents may optionally be used as solubilisers or dissolving aids, and the solutions may be transferred into injection vials or ampoules or infusion bottles.

Capsules containing one or more active substances or combinations of active substances may for example be prepared by mixing the active substances with inert carriers such as lactose or sorbitol and packing them into gelatine capsules.

5 Suitable suppositories may be made for example by mixing with carriers provided for this purpose, such as neutral fats or polyethyleneglycol or the derivatives thereof.

Excipients which may be used include, for example, water, pharmaceutically acceptable organic solvents such as paraffins (e.g. petroleum fractions), vegetable

10 oils (e.g. groundnut or sesame oil), mono- or polyfunctional alcohols (e.g. ethanol or glycerol), carriers such as e.g. natural mineral powders (e.g. kaolins, clays, talc, chalk), synthetic mineral powders (e.g. highly dispersed silicic acid and silicates), sugars (e.g. cane sugar, lactose and glucose), emulsifiers (e.g. lignin, spent sulphite liquors, methylcellulose, starch and polyvinylpyrrolidone) and lubricants (e.g. 15 magnesium stearate, talc, stearic acid and sodium lauryl sulphate).

For oral use the tablets may obviously contain, in addition to the carriers specified, additives such as sodium citrate, calcium carbonate and dicalcium phosphate together with various additional substances such as starch, preferably potato starch,

20 gelatin and the like. Lubricants such as magnesium stearate, sodium laurylsulphate and talc may also be used to produce the tablets. In the case of aqueous suspensions the active substances may be combined with various flavour enhancers or colourings in addition to the abovementioned excipients.

25 The dosage of the compounds according to the invention is naturally highly dependent on the method of administration and the complaint which is being treated. When administered by inhalation the compounds of formula (I) are characterised by a high potency even at doses in the microgram range. The compounds of formula (I) may also be used effectively above the microgram range. The dosage may then be in 30 the gram range, for example.

## COMBINATIONS WITH OTHER ACTIVE SUBSTANCES

In another aspect the present invention relates to the above mentioned pharmaceutical formulations as such which are characterised in that they contain a compound according to the present invention.

5 A further aspect of the present invention refers to a combination of each of the compounds of the present invention, preferably at least one compound according to the present invention with another compound selected from the group of for example beta-secretase inhibitors; gamma-secretase inhibitors; gamma-secretase modulators; amyloid aggregation inhibitors such as e.g. alzhemed; directly or  
10 indirectly acting neuroprotective and/or disease-modifying substances; anti-oxidants, such as e.g. vitamin E, ginko biloba or ginkolide; anti-inflammatory substances, such as e.g. Cox inhibitors, NSAIDs additionally or exclusively having A $\beta$  lowering properties; HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, such as statins; acetylcholine esterase inhibitors, such as donepezil, rivastigmine, tacrine, galantamine; NMDA receptor  
15 antagonists such as e.g. memantine; AMPA receptor agonists; AMPA receptor positive modulators, AMPkines, glycine transporter 1 inhibitors; monoamine receptor reuptake inhibitors; substances modulating the concentration or release of neurotransmitters; substances inducing the secretion of growth hormone such as ibutamoren mesylate and capromorelin; CB-1 receptor antagonists or inverse  
20 agonists; antibiotics such as minocyclin or rifampicin; PDE1, PDE2, PDE4, PDE5 and / or PDE10 inhibitors, GABAA receptor inverse agonists; GABAA receptor antagonists; nicotinic receptor agonists or partial agonists or positive modulators; alpha4beta2 nicotinic receptor agonists or partial agonists or positive modulators; alpha7 nicotinic receptor agonists or partial agonists; histamine receptor H3  
25 antagonists; 5-HT4 receptor agonists or partial agonists; 5-HT6 receptor antagonists; alpha2-adrenoreceptor antagonists, calcium antagonists; muscarinic receptor M1 agonists or partial agonists or positive modulators; muscarinic receptor M2 antagonists; muscarinic receptor M4 antagonists; metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 positive modulators; metabotropic glutamate receptor 2 antagonists, and other  
30 substances that modulate receptors or enzymes in a manner such that the efficacy and/or safety of the compounds according to the invention is increased and/or unwanted side effects are reduced.

This invention further relates to pharmaceutical compositions containing one or more, preferably one active substance. At least one active substance is selected from the compounds according to the invention and/or the corresponding salts thereof. Preferably the composition comprises only one such active compound. In case of 5 more than one active compound the other one can be selected from the aforementioned group of combination partners such as alzhemed, vitamin E, ginkolide, donepezil, rivastigmine, tacrine, galantamine, memantine, ibutamoren mesylate, capromorelin, minocyclin and/or rifampicin. Optionally the composition comprises further ingredients such as inert carriers and/or diluents.

10

The compounds according to the invention may also be used in combination with immunotherapies such as e.g. active immunisation with Abeta or parts thereof or passive immunisation with humanised anti-Abeta antibodies or antibodyfragments for the treatment of the above mentioned diseases and conditions.

15

The combinations according to the present invention may be provided simultaneously in one and the same dosage form, i.e. in form of a combination preparation, for example the two components may be incorporated in one tablet, e. g. in different layers of said tablet. The combination may be also provided separately, in form of a 20 free combination, i.e the compounds of the present invention are provided in one dosage form and one or more of the above mentioned combination partners is provided in another dosage form. These two dosage forms may be equal dosage forms, for example a co-administration of two tablets, one containing a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of the present invention and one 25 containing a therapeutically effective amount of the above mentioned combination partner. It is also possible to combine different administration forms, if desired. Any type of suitable administration forms may be provided.

30

The compound according to the invention, or a physiologically acceptable salt thereof, in combination with another active substance may be used simultaneously or at staggered times, but particularly close together in time. If administered simultaneously, the two active substances are given to the patient together; if administered at staggered times the two active substances are given to the patient

successively within a period of less than or equal to 12, particularly less than or equal to 6 hours.

5 The dosage or administration forms are not limited, in the frame of the present invention any suitable dosage form may be used. Exemplarily the dosage forms may be selected from solid preparations such as patches, tablets, capsules, pills, pellets, dragees, powders, troches, suppositories, liquid preparations such as solutions, suspensions, emulsions, drops, syrups, elixirs, or gaseous preparations such as aerosols, sprays and the like.

10

The dosage forms are advantageously formulated in dosage units, each dosage unit being adapted to supply a single dose of each active component being present. Depending from the administration route and dosage form the ingredients are selected accordingly.

15

The dosage for the above mentioned combination partners is expediently 1/5 of the normally recommended lowest dose up to 1/1 of the normally recommended dose.

20

The dosage forms are administered to the patient for example 1, 2, 3, or 4 times daily depending on the nature of the formulation. In case of retarding or extended release formulations or other pharmaceutical formulations, the same may be applied differently (e.g. once weekly or monthly etc.). It is preferred that the compounds of the invention be administered either three or fewer times, more preferably once or twice daily.

25

## EXAMPLES

### PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

30 The following examples propose pharmaceutical formulations that may illustrate the present invention without restricting its scope:

The term "active substance" denotes one or more compounds according to the invention including the salts thereof.

Example ATablets containing 100 mg of active substance

5 Composition:

1 tablet contains:

active substance 100.0 mg

lactose 80.0 mg

corn starch 34.0 mg

10 polyvinylpyrrolidone 4.0 mg

magnesium stearate 2.0 mg

220.0 mg

Example B

15

Tablets containing 150 mg of active substance

Composition:

1 tablet contains:

20 active substance 150.0 mg

powdered lactose 89.0 mg

corn starch 40.0 mg

colloidal silica 10.0 mg

polyvinylpyrrolidone 10.0 mg

25 magnesium stearate 1.0 mg

300.0 mg

Example C30 Hard gelatine capsules containing 150 mg of active substance

1 capsule contains:

active substance	150.0 mg
corn starch (dried)	approx. 80.0 mg
lactose (e.g. granulated)	approx. 87.0 mg
magnesium stearate	<u>3.0 mg</u>
5	approx. 320.0 mg

Capsule shell: size 1 hard gelatine capsule.

#### Example D

##### 10 Suppositories containing 150 mg of active substance

1 suppository contains:

active substance	150.0 mg
polyethyleneglycol 1500	550.0 mg
15 polyethyleneglycol 6000	460.0 mg
polyoxyethylene sorbitan monostearate	<u>840.0 mg</u>
	2,000.0 mg

#### Example E

##### 20

##### Ampoules containing 10 mg active substance

Composition:

active substance	10.0 mg
25 0.01 N hydrochloric acid q.s.	
double-distilled water	ad 2.0 mL

#### Example F

##### 30

##### Ampoules containing 50 mg of active substance

## Composition:

active substance 50.0 mg  
0.01 N hydrochloric acid q.s.  
double-distilled water ad 10.0 mL

5

The preparation of any the above mentioned formulations can be done following standard procedures.

**BIOLOGICAL ASSAY**

10 The in vitro effect of the compounds of the invention can be shown with the following biological assays.

**PDE9A2 assay protocol:**

15 The PDE9A2 enzymatic activity assay was run as scintillation proximity assay (SPA), in general according to the protocol of the manufacturer (Amersham Biosciences, product number: TRKQ 7100).

20 As enzyme source, lysate (PBS with 1 % Triton X-100 supplemented with protease inhibitors, cell debris removed by centrifugation at 13.000 rpm for 30 min) of SF 9 cell expressing the human PDE9A2 was used. The total protein amount included in the assay varied upon infection and production efficacy of the SF9 cells and lay in the range of 0.1 – 100 ng.

In general, the assay conditions were as follows:

- total assay volume: 40 microliter
- protein amount: 0.1 – 50 ng
- substrate concentration (cGMP): 20 nanomolar; ~1 mCi/l
- incubation time: 60 min at room temperature
- final DMSO concentration: 0.2 - 1 %

30 The assays were run in 384-well format. The test reagents as well as the enzyme and the substrate were diluted in assay buffer. The assay buffer contained 50 mM Tris, 8.3 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 1.7 mM EGTA, 0.1 % BSA, 0.05 % Tween 20; the pH of assay buffer was adjusted to 7.5. The reaction was stopped by applying a PDE9 specific inhibitor (e.g. compounds according to WO04099210 or WO04099211) in excess.

**Determination of % inhibition:**

The activity of the positive control (minus the negative control = background) is set to 100 % and activity in the presence of test compound is expressed relative to these

5 100 %. Within this setting, an inhibition above 100 % might be possible due to the nature of the variation of the positive control within the assay. In the following inhibition of PDE 9A2 is presented for a concentration at 10  $\mu$ M, if not indicated otherwise.

**10 Determination of IC<sub>50</sub>:**

IC<sub>50</sub> can be calculated with GraphPadPrism or other suited software setting the positive control as 100 and the negative control as 0. For calculation of IC<sub>50</sub> dilutions of the test compounds (substrates) are to be selected and tested following the aforementioned protocol.

15

**Data**

In the following, % inhibition data will illustrate that the compounds according to the present invention are suited to inhibit PDE9 and thus provide useful pharmacological properties. The examples are not meant to be limiting. The table also provides IC<sub>50</sub>

20 values. The values are presented as being within a nanomolar range (nM), i.e. within the range of either 1 nanomolar to 100 nanomolar or within the range of 101 nanomolar to 1200 nanomolar. The specific IC<sub>50</sub> value is within said range. The example number refer to the final examples as outlined in the section "**Exemplary embodiments**".

25 All data are measured according to the procedure described herein.

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
1	98	1-100
2	101	1-100

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
3	94	1-100
4	100	1-100

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
5	98	1-100
6	98	1-100
7	96	1-100
8	98	1-100
9	97	1-100
10	102	1-100
11	89	101-1500
12	83	101-1500
13	98	101-1500
14	94	101-1500
15	93	101-1500
16	104	1-100
17	103	1-100
18	100	1-100
19	100	1-100
20	104	1-100
21	103	1-100
22	104	1-100
23	100	101-1500
24	98	101-1500
25	103	1-100
26	100	1-100
27	104	1-100
28	91	101-1500
30	98	1-100
31	99	1-100
32	98	1-100
33	98	1-100
34	96	101-1500
35	94	1-100
36	99	1-100

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
37	97	1-100
38	85	101-1500
39	84	101-1500
44	92	101-1500
45	97	1-100
46	98	1-100
47	98	1-100
48	96	101-1500
48-2	92	101-1500
48-3	95	1-100
48-4	99	1-100
48-5	93	101-1500
48-6	87	101-1500
49	99	1-100
50	95	101-1500
51	98	101-1500
52	98	1-100
53	100	1-100
54	102	1-100
55	100	1-100
56	99	1-100
57	101	1-100
58	101	1-100
59	95	101-1500
60	101	1-100
61	99	1-100
62	100	1-100
63	93	101-1500
64	97	1-100
65	101	1-100
66	100	1-100

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
67	99	1-100
68	96	101-1500
69	97	101-1500
70	100	1-100
71	98	1-100
72	97	101-1500
72-2	98	1-100
72-3	98	1-100
72-4	101	1-100
72-5	99	1-100
72-6	96 at 1µM	1-100
72-7	100	1-100
72-8	98	1-100
72-9	100	1-100
72-10	52 at 3.3µM	101-1500
72-11	84	1-100
73	98	1-100
74	98	1-100
75	101	1-100
76	99	1-100
77	100	1-100
78	97	1-100
79	95	101-1500
80	91	101-1500
81	95	101-1500
82	91	101-1500
83	88	101-1500
84	81	101-1500
85	94	101-1500

Example No.	% Inhibition*	IC50 range (nM)
86	77	101-1500
87	81	101-1500
88	93	101-1500
89	98	1-100
90	97	1-100
91	95	1-100
92	93	101-1500
93	94	1-100
94	98	1-100
95	97	1-100
95-1	111	1-100
96	93	1-100
97	100	1-100
98	100	1-100
99	100	1-100
100	95	101-1500
101	100	1-100
102	96	101-1500
103	96 at 3.3µM	1-100
104	97	1-100
105	97	101-1500
106	83	1-100
107	100	1-100
108	99	1-100
109	93	
110	95	
111	74	1-100
112	97	1-100
113	98	1-100

\* inhibition of PDE 9A2 at 10 µM, if not indicated otherwise

**In vivo effect:**

The in vivo effect of the compounds of this invention can be tested in the Novel Object Recognition test according to the procedure of Prickaerts *et al.* (*Neuroscience* 5 **2002**, 113, 351-361).

For further information concerning biological testing of the compounds of the present invention see also *Neuropharmacology* **2008**, 55, 908-918.

10 Beside the inhibition property toward the target PE9, compounds according to the present invention may provide further pharmacokinetic properties of advantage. Among such properties may be a beneficial selectivity profile in view of the target, beneficial safety features, balanced metabolism, bioavailability, high fraction absorbed, blood brain transport properties, low risk of causing drug - drug interaction, 15 balanced clearance, high mean residence time (mrt), favourable exposure in the effect compartment and so on.

**CHEMICAL MANUFACTURE**

20 Abbreviations:

APCI	<i>Atmospheric Pressure Chemical Ionization</i>
CO <sub>2</sub> (sc)	<i>supercritical carbon dioxide</i>
DMSO	<i>dimethyl sulphoxide</i>
25 DEA	<i>diethylamine</i>
DIBAH	<i>diisobutylaluminiumhydride</i>
DIPEA	<i>diisopropylethylamine</i>
DMF	<i>dimethylformamide</i>
EI	<i>electron ionization (in MS)</i>
30 ESI	<i>electrospray ionization (in MS)</i>
Exm.	<i>Example</i>

	<i>F<sub>p</sub></i>	<i>melting point</i>
	<i>h</i>	<i>hour(s)</i>
	<i>HPLC</i>	<i>high performance liquid chromatography</i>
	<i>HPLC-MS</i>	<i>coupled high performance liquid chromatography-mass spectroscopy</i>
5	<i>GC-MS</i>	<i>gas chromatography with mass spectrometric detection</i>
	<i>MPLC</i>	<i>medium pressure liquid chromatography</i>
	<i>min</i>	<i>minutes</i>
	<i>MS</i>	<i>mass spectroscopy</i>
	<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>retention factor</i>
10	<i>R<sub>t</sub></i>	<i>retention time (in HPLC)</i>
	<i>TBTU</i>	<i>O-(Benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluroniumtetrafluorborat</i>
	<i>TEA</i>	<i>triethylamine</i>
	<i>TFA</i>	<i>trifluoroacetic acid</i>
	<i>THF</i>	<i>tetrahydrofuran</i>
15	<i>TLC</i>	<i>thin-layer chromatography</i>

**LC-MS methods:****20 Method 1 (M1)**

MS apparatus type: Waters Micromass ZQ; HPLC apparatus type: Waters Alliance 2695, Waters 2996 diode array detector; column: Varian Microsorb 100 C18, 30 x 4.6 mm, 3.0  $\mu$ m; eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: 0.0 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  0.18 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  2.0 min 98% B  $\rightarrow$  2.2 min 98% B  $\rightarrow$  2.3 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  2.5 min 5% B; flow rate: 3.5 mL/min; UV detection: 210-380 nm.

**Method 1E hydro (M1Eh)**

Instrument: LC/MS ThermoFinnigan. Hplc Surveyor DAD, MSQ Quadrupole; column: Synergi Hydro-RP80A, 4  $\mu$ m, 4.60 x 100 mm; eluent A: 90% water + 10% acetonitrile+ammonium formate 10 mM; eluent B = ACN 90%+10% H<sub>2</sub>O + 30 NH<sub>4</sub>COOH 10 mM; gradient: A(100) for 1.5 min, then to B (100) in 10 min for 1.5 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV Detection: 254nm; Ion source: APCI.

**Method A (MA)**

Instrument: HPLC/MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, LCQduo Ion trap.; column: Sunryse MS-C18, 5  $\mu$ m, 4.6x100 mm; eluent A: water + 20 mM ammonium formate; eluent B: acetonitrile + 20 mM ammonium formate; gradient: A/B (95:5) for 1 min, then to A/B (5:95) in 7 min for 1.5 min; flow rate: 0.85 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

### 5 **Method 1D (M1D)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, MSQ Quadrupole; column: Sunryse MS-C18, 5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 100 mm; eluent A: 90 % water + 10 % acetonitrile + ammonium formate 10 mM; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 % water + ammonium formate 10 mM; gradient: A (100) for 1 min, then to B (100) in 7 min for 1 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: APCI.

### 10 **Method 1E (M1E)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, MSQ Quadrupole; column: Symmetry C8, 5  $\mu$ m, 3 x 150 mm; eluent A: 90 % water + 10 % acetonitrile + ammonium formate 10 mM; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 %  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  + ammonium formate 10 mM; gradient: A (100) for 1.5 min, then to B (100) in 10 min for 1.5 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: APCI.

### 15 **Method 1E fusion (M1Ef)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, MSQ Quadrupole; column: Synergi Fusion-RP80A, 4  $\mu$ m, 4.60 x 100 mm; eluent A: 90 % water + 10 % acetonitrile + ammonium formate 10 mM; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 %  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  + ammonium formate 10 mM; gradient: A (100 %) for 1.5 min, then to B (100 %) in 10 min for 1.5 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: APCI.

### 20 **Method 1F (M1F)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, Surveyor MSQ single quadrupole; column: Eclipse XDB-C18, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 100 mm; eluent A: 90 % water + 10 % acetonitrile +  $\text{NH}_4\text{COOH}$  10 mM; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 % water +  $\text{NH}_4\text{COOH}$  10 mM; gradient: A (100) for 1.5 min, then to B (100) in 10 min for 3 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: APCI.

**Method 2F (M2F)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, Finnigan LCQduo Ion trap; column: Symmetry-C18, 5  $\mu$ m, 3 x 150 mm; eluent A: 95 % water + 5 % acetonitrile + formic acid 0.1 %; eluent B: acetonitrile 95 % + 5 % water + formic acid 0.1 %; gradient: A/B (95/5) for 1.5 min, then to A/B (5/95) in 10 min for 1.5 min; flow rate: 1 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

**Method 2L (M2L)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, Finnigan LCQduo Ion trap; column: Symmetry Shield, 5  $\mu$ m, 4,6 x 150 mm; eluent A: 90 % water + 10 % acetonitrile + formic acid 0.1 %; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 % water + formic acid 0.1 %; flow rate: 0,85 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

**Method 2M (M2M)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS ThermoFinnigan. HPLC Surveyor DAD, Finnigan LCQduo Ion trap; column: Symmetry Shield RP8, 5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 150 mm; eluent A: 90 % water +10 % acetonitrile + formic acid 0.1 %; eluent B: acetonitrile 90 % + 10 % water + formic acid 0.1 %; gradient: A/B (90/10) for 1.5 min, then to A/B (10/90) in 10 min for 2 min; flow rate: 1.2 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: APCI.

**Method Grad\_C8\_acidic (MGC8a)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS Waters. HPLC Alliance 2695 DAD, ZQ Quadrupole; column: Xterra MS-C8, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 50 mm; eluent A: water + 0.1 % TFA + 10 % acetonitrile; eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: A/B (80:20), then to A/B (10:90) in 3.25 min for 0.75 min; flow rate: 1.3 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

**Method Grad\_C18\_acidic (MGC18a)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS Waters. HPLC Alliance 2695 DAD, ZQ Quadrupole; column: Sunfire MS-C18, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 50 mm; eluent A: water + 0.1 % TFA + 10 % acetonitrile; eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: A/B (80:20), then to A/B (10:90) in 3.25 min for 0.75 min; flow rate:1.3 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

**Method Grad\_90\_10\_C8\_acidic (MG90C8a)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS Waters. HPLC Alliance 2695 DAD, ZQ Quadrupole; column: Xterra MS-C8, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 50 mm; eluent A: water + 0.1 % TFA + 10 % acetonitrile; eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: A (100 %), then to A/B (10:90) in 3.25 min for 0.75 min; flow rate: 1.3 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

5

#### **Method Grad\_90\_10\_C18\_acidic (MG90C18a)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS Waters. HPLC Alliance 2695 DAD, ZQ Quadrupole; column: Xterra MS-C18, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 50 mm; eluent A: water + 0.1 % TFA + 10 % acetonitrile; eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: A (100), then to A/B (10:90) in 3.25 min for 0.75 min; flow rate: 1.3 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

10

#### **Method Grad\_C8\_NH<sub>4</sub>COOH (MGC8N)**

Instrument: HPLC-MS Waters. HPLC Alliance 2695 DAD, ZQ Quadrupole. Column: Xterra MS-C8, 3.5  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 50 mm; eluent A: water + ammonium formate 5 mM + 10 % acetonitrile; eluent B: acetonitrile; gradient: A 100 %, then to A/B (10:90) in 3.25 min for 0.75 min; flow rate: 1.3 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm; ion source: ESI.

15

#### **Method 2 (M2)**

MS apparatus type: Waters Micromass ZQ; HPLC apparatus type: Waters Alliance 2695, Waters 2996 diode array detector; column: Varian Microsorb 100 C18, 30 x 4.6 mm, 3.0  $\mu$ m; eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: methanol; gradient: 0.00 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  0.35 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  3.95 min 100% B  $\rightarrow$  4.45 min 100% B  $\rightarrow$  4.55 min 5% B  $\rightarrow$  4.90 min 5% B; flow rate: 2.4 mL/min; UV detection: 210-380 nm.

25

#### **Chiral HPLC Methods**

Instrument: Agilent 1100. Column: Chiralpak AS-H Daicel, 4.6  $\mu$ m, 4.6 x 250 mm; Method Chiral 1: eluent: hexane/ethanol 97/3 (isocratic); flow rate: 1.0 mL/min ; UV detection: 254 nm.

30

Method Chiral 2: eluent: hexane/ethanol 98/2 (isocratic); flow rate: 1.0 mL/min; UV detection: 254 nm.

Instrument: Agilent 1100. Column: Chiralpak AD-H Daicel, 4.6 µm, 4.6 x 250 mm;  
Method Chiral 3: eluent: hexane/methanol + DEA 85/15 (isocratic); flow rate: 4.0  
mL/min; UV Detection: 254 nm.

5 Instrument: Berger „Analytix“ Column: Chiralpak IC Daicel, 5 µm, 4.6 mm x 250 mm;  
Method Chiral 4: eluent: CO<sub>2</sub> (sc) / 25% isopropanol / 0.2% DEA (isocratic); flow rate:  
4 mL/min; Temp: 40°C; Back-pressure: 100 bar; UV Detection: 210/220/254 nm.

10 Instrument: Berger Multigram II. Column: 2x Chiralpak IC Daicel, 5 µm, 20 mm x 250  
mm;  
Method Chiral 5: eluent: CO<sub>2</sub> (sc) / 25% isopropanol / 0.2% DEA (isocratic); flow rate:  
50 mL/min; Temp: 40°C; Pressure 100 bar; UV Detection 220nm.

### GC/MS methods

15 **Method 3A (M3A)**

Instrument: GC/MS Finnigan. Trace GC, MSQ quadrupole; Column: DB-5MS, 25 m x  
0.25 mm x 0.25 µm; Carrier Gas: Helium, 1 mL/min constant flow. Oven program:  
50°C (hold 1 minute) to 100°C in 10°C/min, to 200°C in 20°C/min, to 300°C in  
30°C/min; detection: Trace MSQ, quadrupole

20 Ion source: IE Scan range: 50-450 uma.

**Method 3A.1 (M3A.1)**

Instrument: GC/MS Finnigan Thermo Scientific. Trace GC Ultra, DSQ II single  
quadrupole. Column: DB-5MS UI, 25 m x 0.25 mm x 0.25 µm; carrier gas: helium, 1  
mL/min constant flow; oven program: 50°C (hold 1 minute), to 100°C in 10°C/min, to  
25 200°C in 20°C/min, to 300°C in 30°C/min eluent, detection: trace DSQ, single  
quadrupole.

### Microwave heating:

Microwave apparatus types:

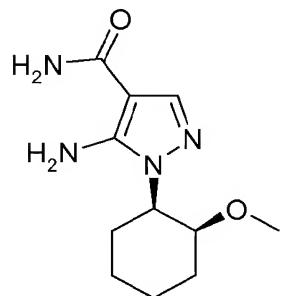
30 • Discover® CEM instruments, equipped with 10 and 35 mL vessels;

- Microwave apparatus type: Biotage Initiator Sixty.

**General comment concerning the presentation of the structures**

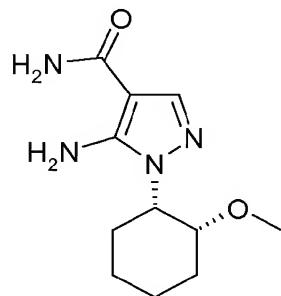
Some compounds have one or more chiral centres. The depicted structure will not necessarily show all the possible stereochemical realisation of the compound but only one. However, in such cases the depicted structure is complemented by a term like "cis-racemic mixture" in order to pin point to the other stereochemical options.

An example is given for Example 8B, below. The presented structural formula is



10 cis – racemic mixture

The added term "cis-racemic mixture" points to the second stereochemical option:



This principle applies to other depicted structures as well.

15 **Synthesis**

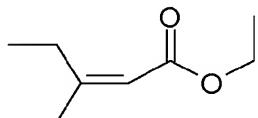
In the following the manufacture of compounds which exemplify the present invention is described. In case the process of manufacture of a specific compound has not been disclosed literally, the skilled person in the art will find a description of analogue procedures, which he can follow in principle, within this description or in the art. At 5 some places in the following description it is said, the examples can be prepared in analogy to another example. If reference should be made to such an "analogue process" the reactions conditions are about the same, even if molar ratios of reagents and educts might to be adjusted. It also will be evident that starting materials within a described process can be varied chemically to achieve the same 10 results, i.e. if a condensation reaction of an ester is described, in that the alcoholic component is a leaving group but not subject of the product, this alcoholic component may vary without significant changes of the procedure as such.

Starting materials are numbers by a figure followed by a letter (e.g. Example 1A), the exemplary embodiments of the invention are numbered by a figure (e.g. Example 1).

15

### Starting compounds:

#### Example 1A



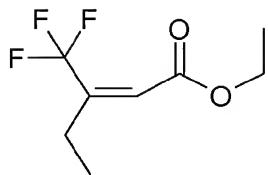
20

75.0 g (215 mmol) carbethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane were suspended in 225 mL toluene. 100 mL (948 mmol) 3-pentanone and 5.50 g (45.0 mmol) benzoic acid were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 80°C and stirred 2 days. After 25 cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by vacuum distillation (30 mbar and 130°C bath temperature, main fraction: 88°C). 8.4 g (25 %) of the product were obtained as an oil.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t$  = 1.71 min

30

#### Example 1B

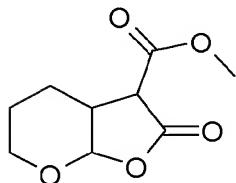


5 A solution of 70.0 g (201 mmol) carbethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane in 300 mL diethyl ether was cooled to 0°C and 25.0 g (198 mmol) 1,1,1-trifluorobutanone were added. The solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred over night. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by vacuum distillation (170 mbar and 130°C bath 10 temperature, main fraction: 95-96°C). 29.0 g (75 %) of the product were obtained as an oil.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t = 1.77$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 196$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

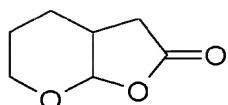
15 Example 1C



Under a nitrogen atmosphere 5.43 mL (59.4 mmol) 3,4-dihydro-2H-pyran, 23.2 g 20 (149 mmol) potassium methyl malonate and 200 mL acetonitrile were combined and 65.2 g (119 mmol) ceric (IV) ammonium nitrate were added. The flask with the reaction mixture was immersed in an ultrasonic bath for 2h at 0°C. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and water and the aqueous phase 25 extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by filtration over silica gel (eluent: dichloromethane). 5.50 g (46 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 201$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

30 Example 1D



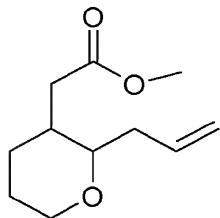
5.50 g (27.5 mmol) of example 1C were dissolved in 50 mL dimethylformamide and 1  
 5 mL water and heated to reflux for 7h. After cooling to room temperature the reaction  
 mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. 3.40 g (78 %) of the product were  
 obtained.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t = 0.56$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 143$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

10

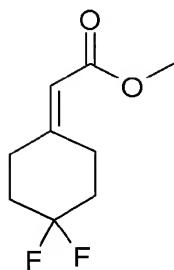
Example 1E



15 To 5.00 mL dichloromethane, 1.66 mL (12.7 mmol) titanium(IV)-chloride solution (1  
 mol/L in dichloromethane) and a solution of 900 mg (6.33 mmol) of example 1D and  
 1.44 g (12.7 mmol) allyltrimethylsilane in 95.0 mL dichloromethane were added at -  
 78°C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 4h, then warmed to room temperature.  
 After stirring 1h at room temperature the reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and 3.00  
 20 mL (76.0 mmol) methanol were added and the mixture stirred over night at room  
 temperature. 1.40 mL (76.0 mmol) water were added. The reaction mixture was  
 extracted three times with water and the organic layer was dried and evaporated  
 under reduced pressure. 1.06 g (84 %) of the product were obtained (as mixture of  
 stereoisomers).

25 HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t = 1.34$  min  
 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 199$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 1F

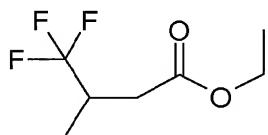


400 mg (10.0 mmol) NaH suspended in 30 mL THF were cooled to 5°C and 1.30 mL (9.00 mmol) methyl-2-(dimethoxyphosphoryl)acetate were added. The reaction

5 mixture was stirred for 1h at this temperature. 1.00 g (7.50 mmol) 4,4-difluorocyclohexanone was added to the mixture. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred over night at ambient temperature. The mixture was hydrolysed with water and THF and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product was obtained as an oil.

10

Example 2A



racemic mixture

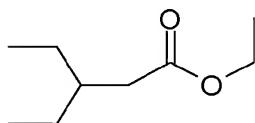
29.0 g (148 mmol) of example 1B were combined with 2.0 g Pd/C (10%) and

15 hydrogenated at room temperature (6h, 15 psi). The reaction mixture was filtered and washed with diethyl ether. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure (500 mbar, 40°C bath temperature). 27.6 g (94 %) of the product were obtained as a liquid.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t$  = 1.65 min

20

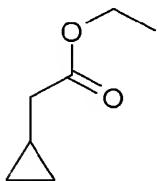
Example 2B



4.70 g (30 mmol) of example 1A were dissolved in 10 mL methanol, 400 mg Pd/C 10% was added, and the mixture hydrogenated at room temperature (8h, 15 psi). The reaction mixture was filtered and washed with methanol. The solvent was evaporated by reduced pressure. 4.00 g (84 %) was obtained as an oil.

5 HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t$  = 1.72 min  
 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 159 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 2C

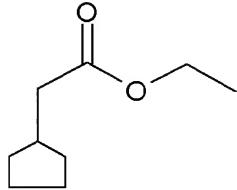
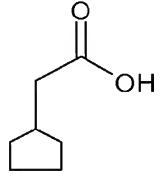
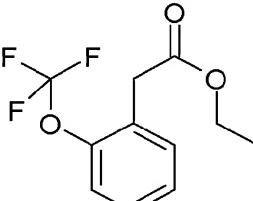
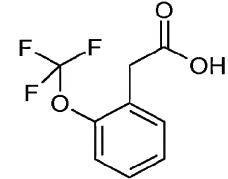
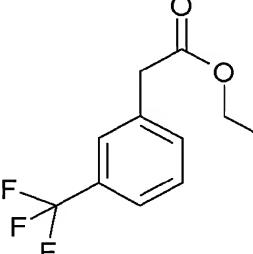
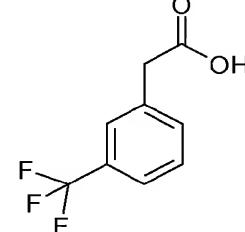
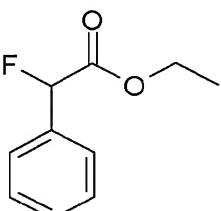
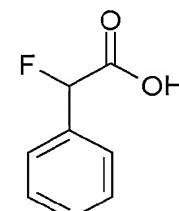
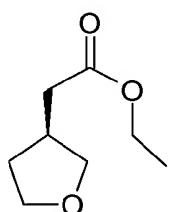
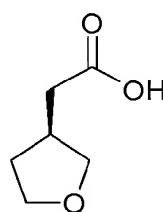


A solution of 10.0 g (100 mmol) of cyclopropyl acetic acid in 40 mL ethanol were cooled to 0°C and 11 mL (152 mmol) thionylchloride were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 50°C over night. After cooling to room temperature the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and filtered over 30 g basic aluminium oxide. The filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. 8.0 g (62 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t$  = 1.29 min

20 The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 2C, using the corresponding acids as starting materials.

	structure	starting material	$R_t$	MS (ESI or EI pos, $m/z$ )
Exm. 2D			1.53 min (M1)	201 (ESI $M+H$ ) <sup>+</sup>

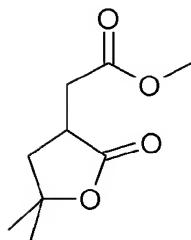
Exm. 2E			1.65 min (M1)	157/58 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup> HPLC-MS
Exm. 2F			1.69 min (M1)	249/50 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2G			1.63 min (M1)	
Exm. 2H racemic mixture				133 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2I				159 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
		Sunshine Chemlab, Inc., Richmond, CA, USA.		

Exm. 2J			1.62 min (M1)	243/245 (Br) (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2K				184 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KA			1.64 min (M1)	291 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KB			1.47 min (M1)	194 (ESI M- ethanol+H ) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KC			1.57 min (M1)	251 (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KD				

Sinova Inc.,  
Bethesda, MD, USA

Exm. 2KE			1.60 min (M1)	261/263 (Br) (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KF			1.59 min (M1)	261/263 (Br) (ESI M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KG racemic mixture			1.23 min (M1)	258 (EI, M <sup>+</sup> )
Exm. 2KH			1.44 min (M1)	195 (ESI, M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 2KI			1.12 min (M1)	213 (ESI, M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 2L



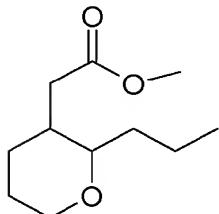
racemic mixture

4.00 g (23.2 mmol) (5,5-Dimethyl-2-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-acetic acid were

5 dissolved in 9 mL acetonitrile and 1 mL methanol and 14.0 mL (27.9 mmol) trimethylsilyldiazomethane (2 M in diethyl ether) were added drop wise. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min, then acetic acid was added until the yellow colour disappeared. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC. 3.14 g (72 %) of the product were  
10 obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 187$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 2M



15

mixture of stereoisomers

690 mg (3.48 mmol) of example 1E were dissolved in 10 mL methanol, 70 mg Pd/C

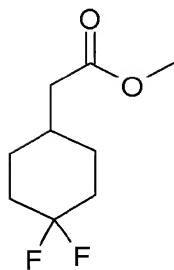
10% was added and the resulting mixture was hydrogenated at (4h, 50 psi). The

20 reaction mixture was filtered and washed with methanol. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 610 mg (88 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 201$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 2N

25



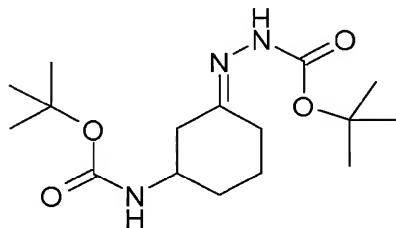
1.49 g (7.42 mmol) of example 1F were dissolved in 20 mL ethanol and 150 mg Pd/C 10 % was added. The mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature (20h, 50 psi).

The reaction mixture was filtered and washed with ethanol. The solvent was

5 evaporated under reduced pressure. 1.27 g (89 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 193$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 3A



10

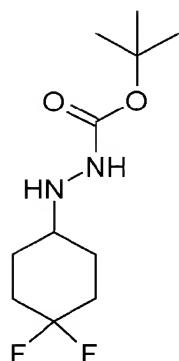
racemic mixture

5.00 g (23.5 mmol) t-butyl-3-oxocyclohexylcarbamate were dissolved in 70 mL ethanol and 3.10 g (23.5 mmol) t-butyl carbazate were added. The reaction mixture 15 was stirred at room temperature for 2h. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 8.85 g (98 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t = 1.37$  min

MS (ESI neg.):  $m/z = 328$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

20 Example 4A



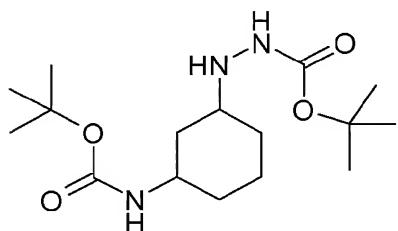
5.00 g (37.3 mmol) 4,4-difluorocyclohexanone were dissolved in 200 mL isopropanol and 5.30 g (40.1 mmol) t-butylcarbazate, 0.75 mL conc. acetic acid and PtO<sub>2</sub> were added. The reaction mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature (12h, 50 psi).

5 The reaction mixture was filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 10.1 g (98 %) of the product were obtained.  
 MS (ESI pos): m/z = 251 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10 The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 4A, using the corresponding ketons as starting materials.

	structure	starting material	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 4B mixture of stereoisomers				245 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Exm. 4C			1.66 min (M1)	215 (M-Isobutene + H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 4D mixture of stereoisomers			1.77 min (M1)	291 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

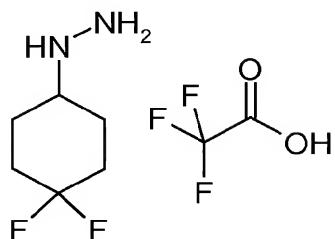
Example 4E

mixture of stereoisomers

5

7.90 g (24.1 mmol) of example 3A were dissolved in 75 mL heptane and 26.5 mL (26.5 mmol) borane tetrahydrofuran complex solution in THF (1 mol/l) were added drop wise at 20°C and stirred at room temperature for 14h. The reaction mixture was cooled with an ice bath and a solution of 60 mL methanol and 6 mL water were

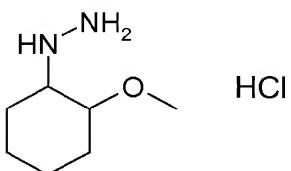
10 added. The mixture was stirred 20 min at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 7.90 g (quantitative) of the product were obtained.

Example 5A

5 4.00 g (16.0 mmol) of example 4A were dissolved in 40 mL dichlormethane and 5.50 mL (71.4 mmol) trifluoroacetic acid were added. The reaction mixture was stirred 12h at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 4.0 g (95 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 151$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

10

Example 5B

mixture of stereoisomers

15

3.05 g (12.5 mmol) of example 4B were dissolved in 10.0 mL (40.0 mmol) HCl in dioxane (4 mol/l). The reaction mixture was stirred 12h at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 2.71 g (quantitative) of the product were obtained.

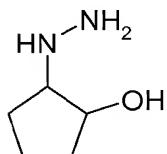
20 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 145$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 5B, using the corresponding hydrazinecarboxylic acid t-butyl esters as starting materials.

25

	structure	Starting material	R <sub>t</sub> [min]	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 5C		Exm. 4C		
Exm. 5D mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 4D		191 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 5E mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 4E		

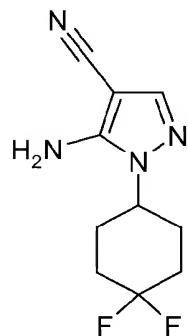
### Example 5F



5 mixture of stereoisomers

1.50 mL (17.3 mmol) 1,2-epoxycyclopentane and 2.00 mL (41.1 mmol) hydrazine hydrate were dissolved in 5 mL of ethanol. The reaction mixture was heated to 85°C and stirred 12h. After cooling to room temperature the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. 2.00 g (100 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos): m/z = 117 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

Example 6A

5

4.20 g (16.0 mmol) of example 5A were suspended with 2.15 g (17.6 mmol) of ethoxymethylenemalononitrile in 50 mL of ethanol and 6.70 mL (48.0 mmol) of triethylamine were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 50°C for 2h. After cooling to room temperature the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in dichloromethane. The suspension was filtered. 3.88 g (96 %) of the product were obtained.

10

HPLC-MS (M1):  $R_t$  = 1.19 min

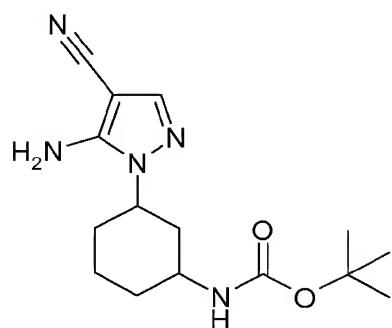
MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 225 ( $M-H$ )<sup>+</sup>

15 The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 6A, using the corresponding hydrazines as starting materials.

	structure	Starting material	$R_t$	MS (ESI pos, $m/z$ )
Exm. 6B mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 5B		221 ( $M+H$ ) <sup>+</sup>

Exm. 6C		Exm. 5C	1.63 min (M1)	247 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 6D mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 5D	1.58 min (M1)	267 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 6E mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 5E	0.60 min (M1)	206 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 6F mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 5F	0.85 min (M1)	193 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 7A



mixture of stereoisomers

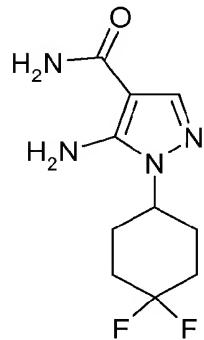
4.00 g (19.5 mmol) of example 6E were suspended in 120 mL of tetrahydrofuran, and

5 4.9 g (22.4 mmol) di-t-butyl-dicarbamate were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 60°C for 5h. After cooling to room temperature the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative MPLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, eluent dichloromethane/methanol 9/1). 2.90 g (48 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (M1): R<sub>t</sub> = 1.28 min

10 MS (ESI pos): m/z = 306 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

Example 8A



3.88 g (14.6 mmol) of example 6A were dissolved in 40 mL of ethanol. At room

15 temperature a solution of 35.0 mL (410 mmol) hydrogen peroxide (35% in water) in 20 mL ammonia (25% in water) were added over a period of 10 min. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2h. The solution was concentrated to a volume of 50 mL under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane and water. The organic layer was extracted with water and 40% 20 Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> solution. The organic layer was dried, filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. 2.44 g (68 %) of the product were obtained.

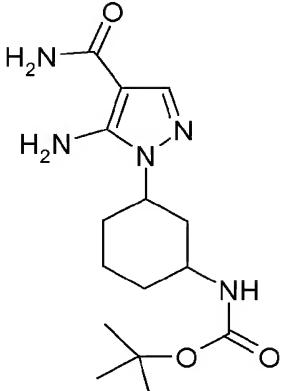
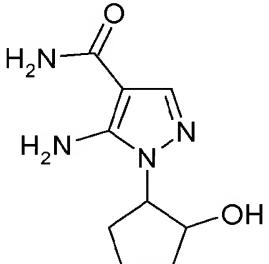
HPLC-MS (M1): R<sub>t</sub> = 0.91 min

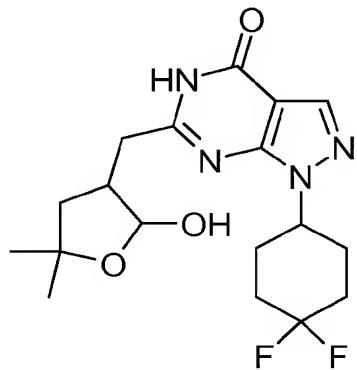
MS (ESI pos): m/z = 245 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 8A, using the corresponding pyrazoles as starting materials.

5

	structure	Starting material	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 8B cis racemic mixture		Exm. 6B	0.89 min (M1)	239 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 8C		Exm. 6C	1.37 min (M1)	265 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 8D mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 6D	1.3 min (M1)	285 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Exm. 8E mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 7A	1.11 min (M1)	324 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 8F mixture of stereoisomers		Exm. 6F	0.59 min (M1)	211 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 9A

mixture of stereoisomers

5

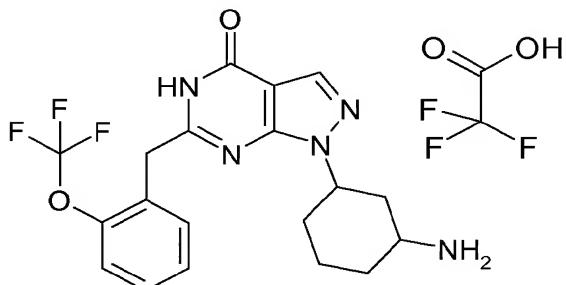
110 mg (0.29 mmol) of example 28 were dissolved in 1 mL THF and cooled to -78 °C. 1.30 mL (1.30 mmol) DIBAH (1M in THF) were added and the mixture stirred 5h at -78°C. The reaction mixture was quenched with NH<sub>3</sub>/MeOH and water was added. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried, filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. 89.0 mg (80 %) of the product were obtained.

10

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.17$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 383$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 10A:



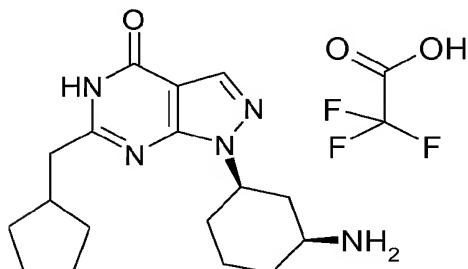
5 mixture of stereoisomers

50.0 mg (0.10 mmol) of example 18 were dissolved in 1.50 mL dichloromethane and 0.30 mL trifluoroacetic acid were added. The mixture was stirred over night at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 37.0 mg (72 %) of the product were obtained.

10 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.16$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 408$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 11A



15

cis racemic mixture

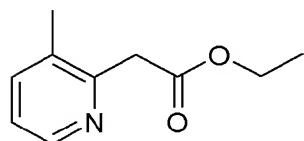
77.5 mg (0.20 mmol) of example 17 were dissolved in 4.0 mL ethanol, 45.0 mg (0.80 mmol) potassium hydroxide were added and the mixture heated to reflux for 20h. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, water was added

20

and the mixture was acidified with trifluoroacetic acid. The aqueous phase was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 40.0 mg (47 %) of the product were obtained.

5 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 1.04 min  
 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 316 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 12A



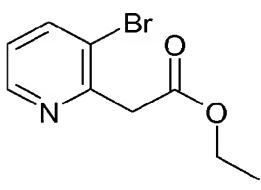
10 5.00 g (46.7 mmol) of 2,3-dimethylpyridine were dissolved in 70 mL THF. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and 29.2 mL (46.7 mmol) n-butyllithium 6M solution in n-hexane were added and the mixture stirred for 30 min. The mixture was cooled to -60°C and diethyl carbonate (5.66mL, 46.7 mmol) dissolved in 25 mL THF was added. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature over night. After adding 5 mL HCl 4M the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane and was made basic with  $K_2CO_3$ . The organic layer was washed with saturated NaCl and evaporated at room temperature. The residue was purified over BIOTAGE SP1 with n-hexane: ethylacetate 1:1. 1.80 g (22 %) of the product were obtained.

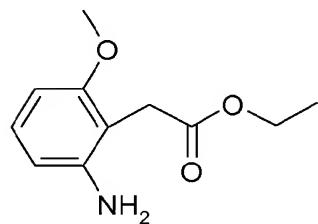
15 20 HPLC-MS (Method1E hydro):  $R_t$  = 6.97 min  
 MS (APCI):  $m/z$  = 180 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 12A, using the corresponding bromide as starting materials.

25

	structure	starting material	$R_t$	MS (APCI pos, $m/z$ )

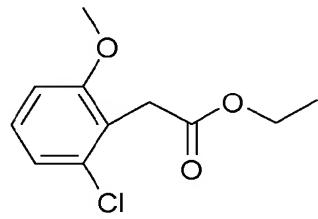
Exm. 12AA			8.23 min (M1Eh)	244/246 (Br) (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
-----------	---	---	--------------------	------------------------------------

Example 13A

2.05 g (8.55 mmol) of Example 2KB were dissolved in 40 mL ethanol. Pd/C was  
 5 added and the mixture was hydrogenated for 2h at room temperature and a pressure  
 of 50 psi. The catalyst was filtered off and the solvent removed under reduced  
 pressure to give 1.80 g (100 %) of the product.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 0.91$  min  
 MS ( ESI pos ):  $m/z = 210.1$  (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10

Example 14A

To 1.83 g (8.73 mmol) of Example 13A were added 60 mL ice cold 4M HCl and the  
 mixture kept cool in a ice/salt bath. 1.14 g sodium nitrite in 13.5 mL ice water were  
 15 added to the mixture. After stirring for 40 min, 1.90 g (19.2 mmol) copper(I)-chloride  
 dissolved in 6 mL conc. HCl were added to the reaction. Then the reaction was  
 allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 40 min. The aqueous solution

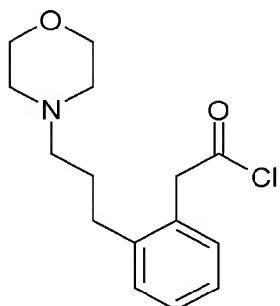
was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried, neutralised with  $K_2CO_3$ , filtered and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane and washed with water before the solvent of the organic fraction was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in 5 ethyl acetate, the precipitate which was formed was filtered off and the filtrate was re-filtered through celite. The solvent was removed again to give 1.24 g (62 %) of the product.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 0.81 min

MS ( ESI pos ):  $m/z$  = 230.9 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

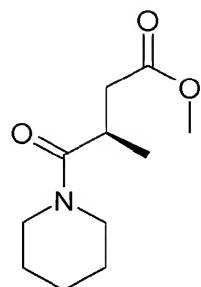
10

Example 15A



15 To 590 mg (2.24 mmol) of 2-(2-(3-morpholinopropyl)phenyl)acetic acid in 3 mL thionylchloride was added one drop of DMF. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1h at ambient temperature. Then the solvent was removed to give the desired product, which was used without further purification in the next step.

Example 16A

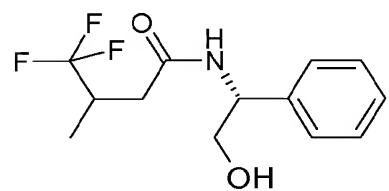


1.74 mL (13.7 mmol) (R)-4-methoxy-2-methyl-4-oxobutanoic acid were dissolved in 1 mL DMF and 7.03 mL (41.1 mmol) DIPEA and 4.83 g (15.1 mmol) TBTU were added and stirred 10 min at room temperature. Then 1.35 mL (13.7 mmol) piperidine were 5 added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 3h at room temperature. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13 % TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 2.31 g (79 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.07$  min

10 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 213$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 17A



diastereomer A

15 A solution of 3-(trifluoromethyl)butyric acid (10.0 g, 64.0 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) was treated with N-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-N'-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (14.7 g, 77.0 mmol), 4-dimethylamino pyridine (11.0 g, 89.7 mmol) and (R)-(-)-phenylglycinol (9.90 g, 70.5 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 20°C for 16h, then concentrated and treated with 10% citric acid in water (300 mL). The mixture was extracted with ethyl 20 ether (2x 200 mL) and the separated organic phase was washed with 10% NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (150 mL) and brine (150 mL). The organic phase was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to give 13.1 g of crude product as a solid.

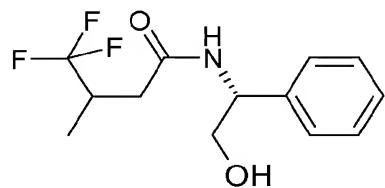
Separation of diastereoisomers was achieved by flash chromatography on  $\text{SiO}_2$  eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate/hexane 6/4. 5.32 g (30 %) of the title compound were obtained.

$R_f$ : 0.23 (ethyl acetate/hexane 6/4)

5 HPLC-MS (1E hydro):  $R_t$  = 6.97 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 276 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>.

Example 17B



10 diastereomer B

3.08 g (17.5 %) of a solid were obtained as second product from flash chromatography of Example 17A.

$R_f$ : 0.16 (ethyl acetate/hexane 6/4)

HPLC-MS (1E hydro):  $R_t$  = 6.92 min

15 MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 276 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>.

Example 18A



Enantiomer A

20 A solution of Example 17A (2.00 g, 7.26 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) was treated with  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (70% in water) (10 mL) and refluxed for 16 h. The mixture was cooled, basified to pH 14 with  $\text{NaOH}$  (32% in water), diluted with water (50 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x 50 mL). The resulting solution was acidified to pH 1 with 9N HCl, extracted with dichloromethane (3x 50 mL) and the combined organic phases were dried. Evaporation of the solvent afforded 0.84 g (74.1 %) of an oil.

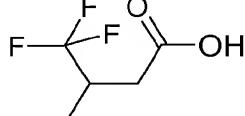
25 HPLC-MS (1E hydro):  $R_t$  = 1.73 min

MS (APCI neg): m/z = 155 (M-H)<sup>-</sup>

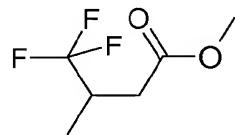
Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 2): R<sub>t</sub> = 6.92 min ee: 99%

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example

5 18A, using the corresponding amide as starting material.

	structure	starting material	R <sub>t</sub> [min]	MS (APCI neg, m/z)
Exm. 18B	 Enantiomer B	Exm. 17B	1.30 (M1Eh) Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 2): 6.49 ee: 98.6%	155 (M-H) <sup>-</sup>

Example 19A



10

EnantiomerA

To a stirred solution of example 18A (440 mg, 2.82 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) and methanol (0.46 mL) under nitrogen atmosphere, 1.55 mL (3.1 mmol)

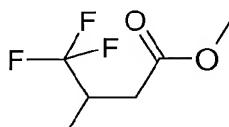
15 trimethylsilyldiazomethane (2.0 M solution in diethyl ether) were added at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred keeping the temperature below 5°C for 1h. The solvent was removed (40°C, 0.33 bar) yielding 480 mg (100 %) of an oil that was used in the next step without further purification.

GC (Method 3A): Rt = 8.01 min

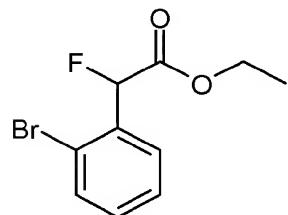
MS (m/z) = 170 M<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example

5 19A, using the corresponding acid as starting material.

	structure	starting material	GC R <sub>t</sub>	MS (m/z)
Exm. 19B	 Enantiomer B	Exm. 18B	8.01 min (Method 3A)	170

Example 20A

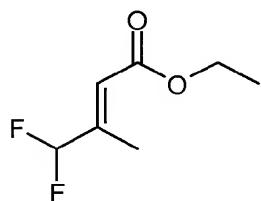


racemic mixture

10 A solution of 5.00 g (19.3 mmol) of example 2KG in 60 mL dichloromethane was cooled to -78°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. 5.06 mL (38.6 mmol) diethylaminosulfur trifluoride were added and stirred for 1 h at -78°C. The mixture was slowly heated to room temperature and stirred for 12 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and diluted with ethyl acetate. Saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution was added. The organic layer was separated, washed with water and brine, dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was filtered through a pad of silica gel and concentrated under reduced pressure. 4.9 g (98 %) of the product were obtained.

15 HPLC-MS (Method1): R<sub>t</sub> = 1.53 min

20 MS (ESI pos): m/z = 278 (M+NH<sub>4</sub>)<sup>+</sup>

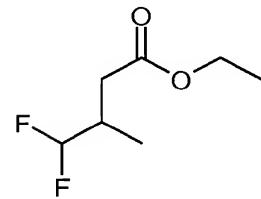
Example 21A

cis/trans mixture

5 A solution of 18.8 g (54.1 mmol) carbethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane in 100 mL diethyl ether were cooled to 0°C and 5.30 g (56.4 mmol) of 1,1-difluoroacetone were added. The solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred over night. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by vacuum distillation (100 mbar and 160°C bath temperature). 7.1 g (76 %) of the product were obtained.

10 HPLC-MS (Method 1):  $R_t = 1.40 / 1.44$  min (cis / trans isomers)

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 164$   $M^+$

Example 22A

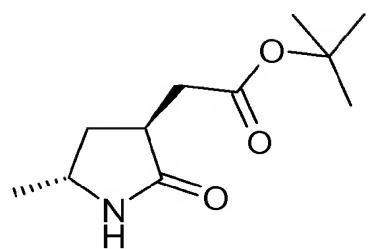
racemic mixture

15 500 mg (3.05 mmol) of example 21A were combined with 160 mg Pd/C (10%) and 15 mL methanol and hydrogenated at room temperature (24h, 15 psi). The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. 0.20 g (40 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 166$   $M^+$

20

Example 23A

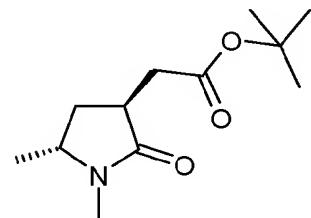


Under nitrogen atmosphere 10.0 g (32.5 mmol) of (3S,5S)-(5-methanesulfonyloxy-methyl-2-oxo-pyrrolidin-3-yl)-acetic acid tert-butyl ester (see US5576444) and 1.29 g sodium borohydride in 40 mL DMSO were slowly heated to 85°C within 3 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and poured onto water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated, dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. 5.6 g (81 %) of the product were obtained.

MS (ESI pos): m/z = 214 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

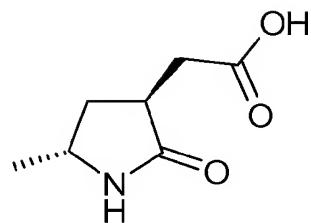
10

Example 24A



284 mg (7.09 mmol) of sodium hydride (60% suspension in mineral oil) in 10 mL of DMF were cooled to 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. 1.26 g (5.91 mmol) of example 15 23A in 8 mL DMF were added. After 2 h, 1.10 mL (17.7 mmol) of methyliodide in 5 mL of DMF were added. The mixture was heated to room temperature and stirred over night. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and ethyl acetate. The phases were separated and the organic layer was dried and evaporated under 20 reduced pressure. 0.89 g (66 %) of the product were obtained. The product was used without further purification in the next step.

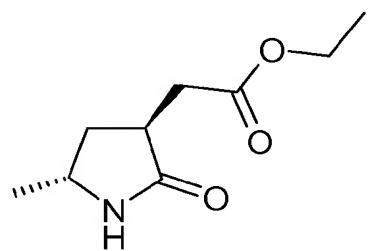
Example 25A



A solution of 3.20 g (14.1 mmol) of example 24A in 5 mL TFA (70% in dichloromethane) was stirred over night at room temperature. The mixture was 5 evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). The fractions containing the product were concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. 0.80 mg (33 %) of the product were obtained.

10 HPLC-MS (Method 1):  $R_t$  = 0.62 min

Example 26A

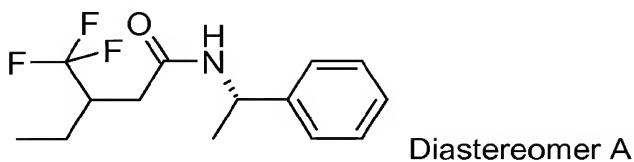


15 To a solution of 801 mg (4.68 mmol) of example 25A in 5 mL ethanol 0.41 mL (5.61 mmol) thionylchloride were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. 656 mg (70 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method 1):  $R_t$  = 1.00 min

20

Example 27A



A solution of racemic 3-trifluoromethyl-pentanoic acid (8 g, 47 mmol), TBTU (16.6 g, 52 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (24.1 mL, 141 mmol) in dimethylformamide (80

5 mL) was stirred at 20°C for 1h then (S)-(-)-1-phenylethylamine (10 g, 82 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for 16 h at 20°C. The solvent was removed and dichloromethane (200 mL) was added. The resulting mixture was washed with 10 % citric acid aqueous solution (200 mL),  $K_2CO_3$  20 % in water (100 mL) and dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ . Evaporation of the solvent gave a crude solid that was mixed with methanol (10 mL) and filtered through a pad of activated basic alumina. Separation of diastereoisomers was obtained by flash chromatography on  $SiO_2$  eluting with a mixture of cyclohexane/ethyl acetate 85/15.

10 4.5 g (35.8 %) of the title compound were obtained as a solid.

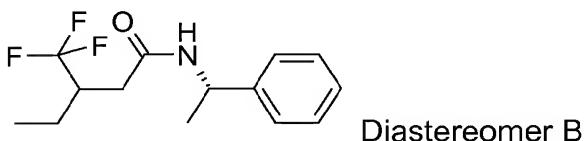
Rf: 0.25 (cyclohexane/ethyl acetate 85/15, stained with basic  $KMnO_4$ )

15 HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 9.35 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 274 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>.

Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 1):  $R_t$ : 5.58 min de: >99 %

### Example 27B



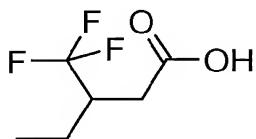
4.4 g (34.2 %) of a solid were obtained as second product from flash chromatography of Example 1B.

Rf: 0.20 (cyclohexane/ethyl acetate 85/15, stained with basic  $KMnO_4$ )

25 HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 9.33 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 274 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>.

Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 1):  $R_t$ : 6.18 min de: >99 %

Example 28A

Enantiomer A

5 A solution of Example 1B (4.6 g, 17 mmol) in dioxane (15 mL) was treated with H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> 70 % in water (25 mL) and refluxed for 16 h. The mixture was cooled, basified to pH 14 with NaOH 32 % in water, diluted with water (50 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x 200 mL). The resulting solution was acidified to pH 1 with 9N HCl, extracted with dichloromethane (3x 500 mL). The combined organic phases  
10 were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of solvent afforded 2.47 g (86.3 %) of the title compound.

R<sub>f</sub>: 0.66 (dichloromethane/methanol 9/1, stained with Bromocresol Green)

Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 1): R<sub>t</sub> 5.58 min ee: >99 %

15 Example 28B

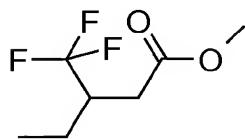
Enantiomer B

20 In analogy to the preparation of Example 1D, the title compound was obtained using Example 1C as starting material.

Yield: 80.3 %

R<sub>f</sub>: 0.66 (dichloromethane/methanol 9/1, stained with Bromocresol Green)

Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 1): R<sub>t</sub>: 5.08 min ee: >99 %

Example 29A

Enantiomer A

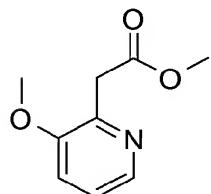
5 To a stirred solution of Example 28A (250 mg, 1.47 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) and methanol (0.25 mL), under nitrogen atmosphere, trimethylsilyldiazomethane (2.0 M solution in diethyl ether) (2.1 mL, 4.19 mmol) was added dropwise at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred keeping the temperature below 5°C for 1h. The solvent was removed (40°C, 0.33 bar) yielding 250 mg (75.4 %) of an oil that was used in the

10 next step without further purification.

GC (Method 3A):  $R_t$ : 3.29 minMS: m/z: 165 (M-19)<sup>+</sup>, 155 (M-29)<sup>+</sup>, 153 (M-31)<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of Example 29A, using the corresponding acids as starting materials:

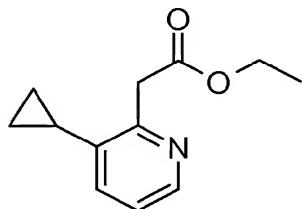
	structure	starting material: carboxylic acid	$R_t$	MS m/z
Exm. 29B Enantiomer B		Example 28B	3.29 min (M3A)	165(M-19) <sup>+</sup> , 155(M-29) <sup>+</sup> , 153(M-31) <sup>+</sup> [EI]

Example 30A

A mixture of (3-methoxy-2-pyridin-2-yl)acetonitrile (400 mg, 2.7 mmol) in 2 mL of methanol and 96 % sulphuric acid (1.8 mL, 32 mmol) was heated in a microwave 5 oven at 120°C for 1h. The mixture was cooled to 0°C, basified with solid NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, diluted with water (2mL) and extracted with dichloromethane. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulphate and evaporated to give 450 mg (92 %) of the compound used in the next step without further purification.

HPLC-MS (Method Grad\_C8\_NH<sub>4</sub>COOH): R<sub>t</sub>: 1.92 min

10 MS (ESI pos): m/z = 182 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

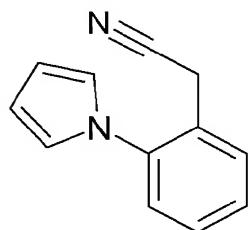
Example 31A

A Schlenk tube was charged with 244 mg (1 mmol) of Example 12AA, 192.37 mg 15 (1.3 mmol) of potassium cyclopropyltrifluoroborate, 742.93 mg (3.5 mmol) of tri-potassium phosphate, 11.23 mg (0.05 mmol) of palladium(II)acetate, 28.04 mg (0.1 mmol) of tricyclohexylphosphine in toluene (4ml) and water (200  $\mu$ l) and heated to 100 °C for 24 hours. After cooling a solid was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash 20 chromatography on SiO<sub>2</sub> using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% n-hexane to 100% ethyl acetate) as eluant. 160 mg (78%) of the title compound were obtained.

GC-MS (Method 3A):  $R_t$ : 11.08 min

MS: 205  $[M]^+$

Example 32A



5

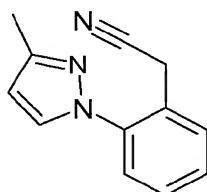
Under inert atmosphere a solution of 500 mg (3.78 mmol) of 2-Aminophenylacetonitrile and 1 mL (7.57 mmol) of 2,5-Dimethoxytetrahydrofuran in 5 mL of Acetic acid was heated to 60 °C for 2 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on  $\text{SiO}_2$  using cyclohexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% cyclohexane to 100% ethyl acetate) as eluant. 470mg of the title compound (68%) were obtained.

GC-MS (Method 3A.1):  $R_t$ : 9.75 min

MS: 182  $[M]^+$

15

Example 33A



A round bottom flask was charged under inert atmosphere with copper iodide ( 760 mg, 4 mmol), cesium carbonate (3.91 g, 12 mmol) then dimethylformamide (20 mL), previously degassed, was added followed by 2-Bromophenylacetonitrile (519  $\mu\text{L}$ , 4 mmol), 3-Methylpyrazole (3.32 mL, 40 mmol) and N-N'-dimethylethylenediamine

(425.86  $\mu$ L, 4 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 120 °C for 2.5 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture was filtered through a Celite pad that was rinsed with dimethylformamide. The volume was reduced under reduced pressure, saturated ammonium chloride aqueous solution was added and extracted with ethyl acetate.

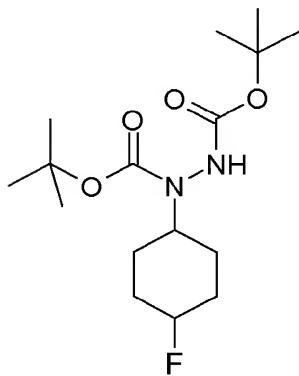
5 The organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution, brine then dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography on SiO<sub>2</sub> using cyclohexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% cyclohexane to 100% ethyl acetate) as eluant. The oil obtained was further purified by SPE cartridge

10 Stratosphere "PL-THIOL MP" to remove copper salts. 300 mg of the title compound (38 %) were obtained .

GC-MS (Method 3A.1): R<sub>t</sub>: 10.47 min

MS: 197 [M]<sup>+</sup>

15 Example 35A



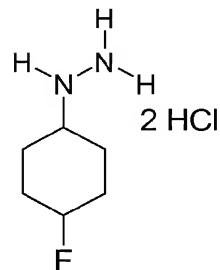
Under inert atmosphere a solution of di-tert-butyl azodicarboxylate (4.67 g, 20.29 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of 4-fluoro-

20 cyclohexanol (1.70 g, 13.24 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (5.32 g, 20.29 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL). After 4 hours at 25 °C the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduce pressure. The thick orange oil was purified by flash chromatography on SiO<sub>2</sub> using cyclohexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% cyclohexane to cyclohexane/ethyl acetate 70/30) as eluant. The

solid was further purified by flash chromatography on  $\text{SiO}_2$  using cyclohexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from cyclohexane/ethylacetate 95/5 to cyclohexane/ethyl acetate 60/40) as eluant. The title compound was obtained as a solid (1.72 g, 39%).

5 GC-MS (Method 3A.1):  $R_t$ : 11.52 and 11.57 min  
MS: 332  $[\text{M}]^+$

Example 36A

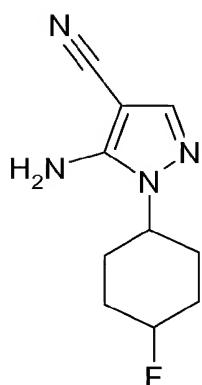


10 A solution of Example 35A (1.72g, 5.17 mmol) in dry diethyl ether (35 mL) at 0°/5°C was treated with gaseous HCl under vigorous stirring for 30 minutes. A solid was formed, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°/5°C for further 2 hours afterwards the solid was filtered and washed with diethyl ether under inert atmosphere. The solid  
15 was dried in a vacuum oven at 50 °C to give the title compound as a solid (0.78g, 73%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1F):  $R_t$ : 0.92 min

MS ( APCI pos): m/z = 133  $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$

20 Example 37A

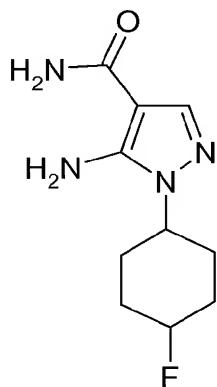


Under inert atmosphere triethylamine (2.12 mL, 15.2 mmol) and ethoxymethylenemalononitrile (0.52 g, 4.18 mmol) were added to a solution of Example 36A (0.78 g, 3.8 mmol) in absolute ethanol (10 mL). The reaction mixture was heated to 80 °C for 1 hour. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The red oil was vigorously stirred several times with diethyl ether. The solid obtained was filtered to give the title compound as a solid (0.85 g, 86%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 6.97 min

MS (APCI neg):  $m/z$  = 207 ( $M+H$ )<sup>-</sup>

Example 38A



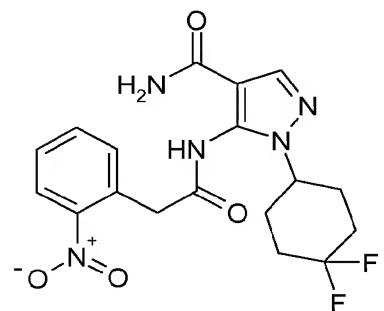
0.85 g (3.061 mmol) of Example 37A was dissolved in 20 mL of absolute ethanol. At 0°/5°C a solution of 6.74 mL (78.37 mmol) hydrogen peroxide (35% in water) in 16.35 mL (117.56 mmol) ammonia (28% in water) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2h. The solution was concentrated to a volume of 50 mL under reduced pressure. The solution was cooled to 0°C, a solid

was filtered, washed thoroughly with water and dried in a vacuum oven at 50 °C to give the title compound as a solid (0.55 g, 79%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E ):  $R_t$  = 5.25 min

5 MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 227 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

Example 39A

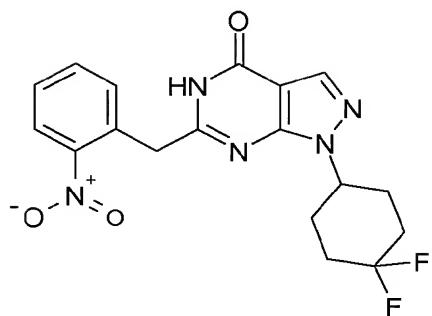


Under inert atmosphere a solution of (2-Nitro-phenyl)-acetyl chloride (817.2 mg, 4.1 mmol) in dry toluene (5 mL) was added dropwise to a suspension of Example 8A (250 mg, 1 mmol) and DMAP (6.25mg, 0.05 mmol) in dry pyridine (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane and washed with HCl 1N. During the extraction a solid was formed. It was filtered and dried, giving the title compound as a solid (304 mg, 73%).

HPLC-MS (Method 2M):  $R_t$  = 8.50 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 408 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

Example 40A



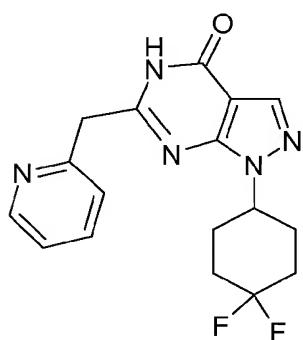
736.43 mg (18.4 mmol) of sodium hydride (60% suspension in mineral oil) were added to a suspension of Example 39A (300 mg, 0.74 mmol) in dry methanol (25 mL) and dry Toluene (15 mL). The reaction mixture was heated to 65 °C for 7 hours. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure and the residue was taken up into H<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL) and acidified with HCl 1N (20 mL) then extracted with dichloromethane (2x10mL). The organic layer was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The solid obtained was triturated with diethyl ether giving the title compound as a solid (205 mg, 71%).

HPLC-MS (Method 2M): R<sub>t</sub> = 8.50 min

MS (APCI pos): m/z = 390 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

### Exemplary embodiments

15 Example 1



100 mg (0.41 mmol) of example 8A were dissolved in 5 mL of absolute ethanol, 300 mg (1.82 mmol) of pyridine-2-yl-acetic acid ethyl ester, and 150 mg (3.75 mmol) of sodium hydride (60% suspension in mineral oil) were added. The reaction mixture

was heated to 150°C for 30 min in a microwave oven. Cooling to room temperature was followed by evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 106 mg (75 %) of the product were obtained as a solid.

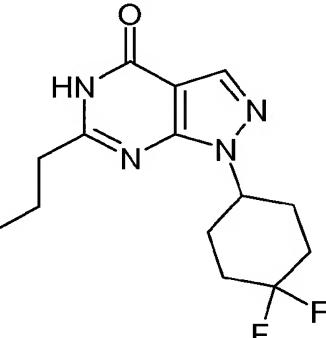
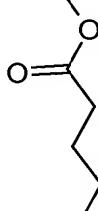
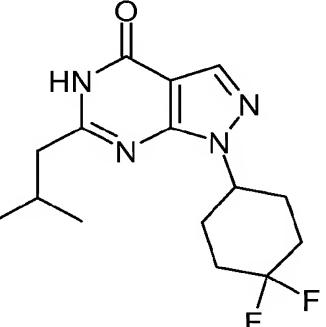
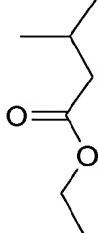
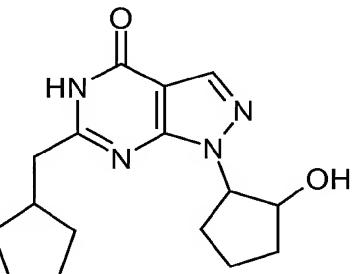
5 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 0.98$  min

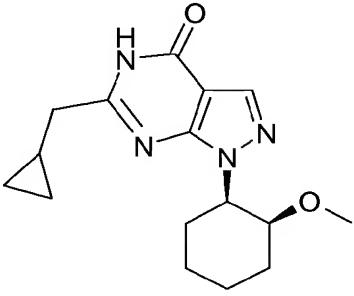
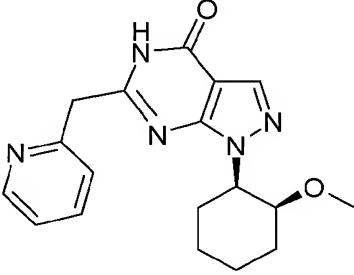
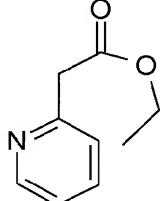
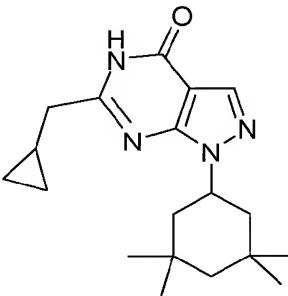
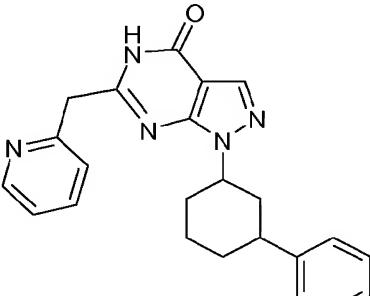
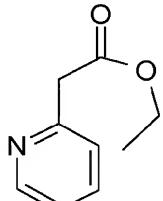
MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 346$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

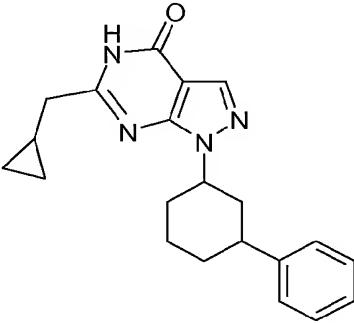
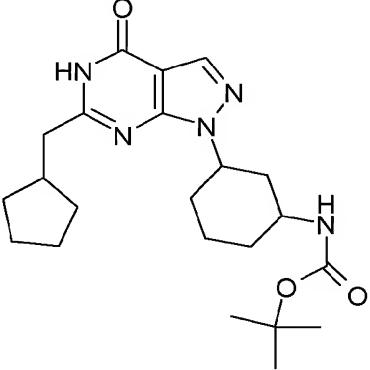
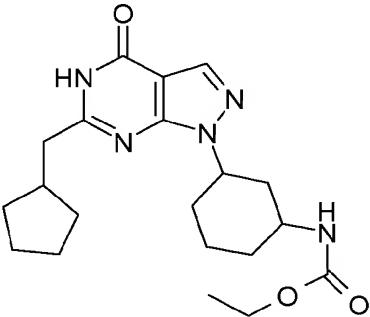
The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 1, using the corresponding pyrazoles and esters as starting materials

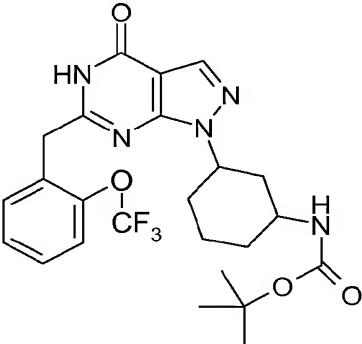
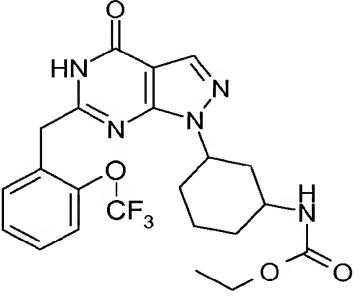
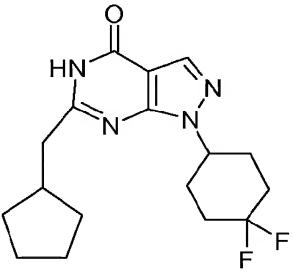
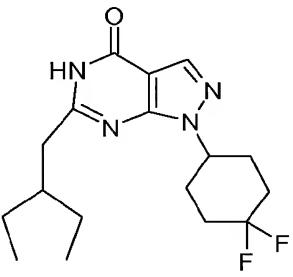
	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	$R_t$	MS (ESI pos/neg, $m/z$ )
Exm. 2		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2C	1.32 min (M1)	309 ( $M+H$ ) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 3		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2F	1.58 min (M1)	427 ( $M-H$ ) <sup>-</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 4		Exm. 8A		1.44 min (M1)	345 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 5		Exm. 8A		1.50 min (M1)	377/379 (Cl) (M-H) <sup>-</sup>
Exm. 6		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2G	1.55 min (M1)	413 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 7		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2D	1.5 min (M1)	381 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 8		Exm. 8A		1.43 min (M1)	311 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 9		Exm. 8A		1.39 min (M1)	311 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 10 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8F	Exm. 2E	1.26 min (M1)	303 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 11 cis racemic mixture		Exm. 8B	Exm. 2C	1.29 min (M1)	303 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 12 cis racemic mixture		Exm. 8B		0.97 min (M1)	340 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 13		Exm. 8C	Exm. 2C	1.82 min (M1)	329 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 14 mixture of stereo- isomers		Exm. 8D		1.28 min (M1)	386 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 15 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8D	Exm. 2C	1.70 min (M1)	349 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 16 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8E	Exm. 2E	1.59 min (M1)	416 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 17 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8E	Exm. 2E	1.40 min (M1)	388 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 18 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8E	Exm. 2F	1.6 min (M1)	508 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 19 mixture of stereois omers		Exm. 8E	Exm. 2F	1.46 min (M1)	480 8M+H <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 20		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2E	1.52 min (M1)	337 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 21		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2B	1.58 min (M1)	339 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 22		Exm. 8A		1.31 min (M1)	297 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 23		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2I	1.21 min (M1)	339 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 24 trans racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2M	1.51 min (Metho d1) (the cis racemic mixture (R <sub>t</sub> = 1.53 min) was re- moved by chroma	395 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
				to- graphy)	
Exm. 25 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2H	1.45 min (M1)	363 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 26		Exm. 8A		1.43 min (M1)	375 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 27 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2A	1.54 min (M1)	379 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

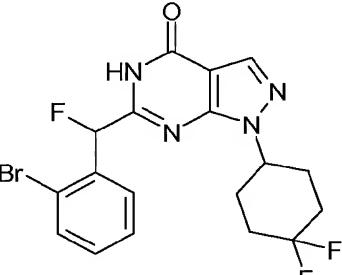
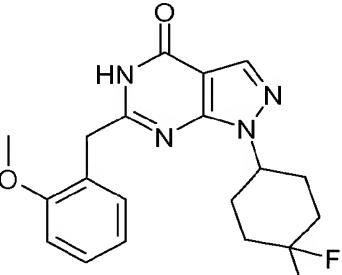
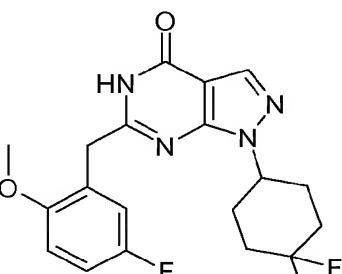
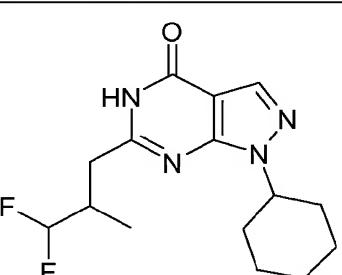
	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 28 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2K	1.32 min (M1)	381 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 29		Exm. 8A		1.44 min (M1)	323 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 30 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A		1.47 min (M1)	365 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 31		Exm. 8A		1.36 min (M1)	370 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 32		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2K	1.44 min (M1)	365 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 33		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2J	1.51 min (M1)	423 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 34		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2N	1.49 min (M1)	387 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

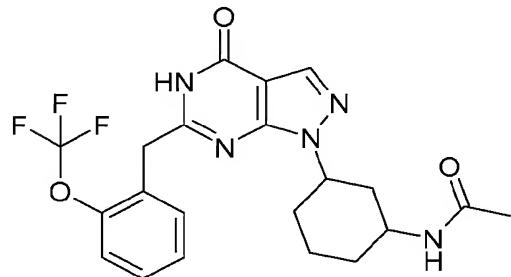
	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 35		Exm. 8A	Exm. 12A	7.47 min (M1Eh)	360 (M+H) <sup>+</sup> Ion Source: APCI
Exm. 36		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KA	2.58 min (M1)	471(M+ H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 37		Exm. 8A	Exm. 14A	1.56 min (M1)	409/411 (Cl) (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 38		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KC	1.31 min (M1)	403(M+ H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 39		Exm. 8A	Exm. 16A	1.36 min (M1)	408(M+ H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 44		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KE	1.54 min (M1)	441/443 (Br) (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 45		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KF	1.54 min (M1)	441/443 (Br) (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 46		Exm. 8A	Exm. 12AA	8.75 min (M1Eh)	424/426 (Br) (M+H) <sup>+</sup> ion source: APCI
Exm. 47 enantio mer A		Exm. 8A	Exm. 19A	9.47 min (M1Eh)	365 (M+H) <sup>+</sup> Ion Source APCI
Exm. 48 enantio mer B		Exm. 8A	Exm. 19B	9.45 min (M1Eh)	365 (M+H) <sup>+</sup> Ion Source APCI

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 48-2 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 20A	1.54 min (Method 1)	441/443 (Br) (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 48-3		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KH	1.46 min (M1)	375 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 48-4		Exm. 8A	Exm. 2KI	1.50 min (M1)	393 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 48-5 racemic mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 22A	3.14 min (M2)	347 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos/neg, m/z)
Exm. 48-6 diastere o-meric mixture		Exm. 8A	Exm. 26A	1.23 min (M1)	380 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 49mixture of stereoisomers

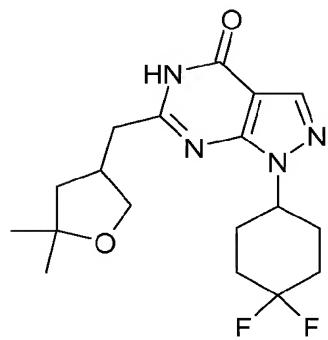
5 25.0 mg (0.08 mmol) of example 10A were dissolved in 2 mL of dichloromethane, 7.20  $\mu$ L (0.10 mmol) acetylchloride and 13.3  $\mu$ L (0.10 mmol) triethylamine were added and the reaction mixture stirred over night at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 2.50 mg (12%) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1): R<sub>t</sub> = 1.28 min

MS ( ESI pos ): m/z = 450 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 49, using the corresponding pyrazoles and acid chlorides as starting materials

	structure	starting material: pyrazole	starting material: acid chloride	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 50 cis racemic mixture		Exm. 11A		1.17 min (M1)	358 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 51 cis racemic mixture		Exm. 11A		1.45 min (M1)	420 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 52:

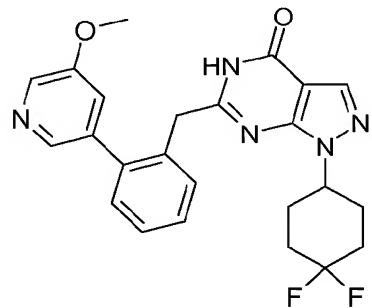
racemic mixture

To 100 mg (0.26 mmol) of example 9A, 0.17 mL (1.05 mmol) triethylsilane, 1 mL dichloromethane and 1 mL trifluoroacetic acid (with 5% water) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred 5h at room temperature and then evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 5 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 32.0 mg (34 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.33$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 367$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 53:



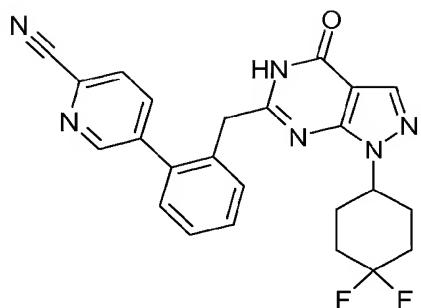
10 The reaction was executed under an argon-atmosphere.

To 100 mg (0.24 mmol) of example 33 and 105 mg (0.69 mmol) 5-methoxy-3-pyridylboronic acid, 5 mL dioxane, 300  $\mu$ L (0.60 mmol) of an aqueous sodium carbonate solution (2 mol/L) and 20.0 mg (0.02 mmol) tetrakis-(triphenylphosphin)-palladium(0) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 150°C for 30 min in a 15 microwave oven. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 90.0 mg (85 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.25$  min

20 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 452$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 54:



The reaction was executed under an argon-atmosphere.

To 100 mg (0.24 mmol) of example 33 and 110 mg (0.48 mmol) 2-cyanopyridine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester, 5 mL dioxane, 300  $\mu$ L (0.60 mmol) of an aqueous sodium

5 carbonate solution (2 mol/L) and 20.0 mg (0.02 mmol) tetrakis-(triphenylphosphin)-palladium(0) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 150°C for 30 min in a microwave oven. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 72.0 mg (68

10 %) of the product were obtained.

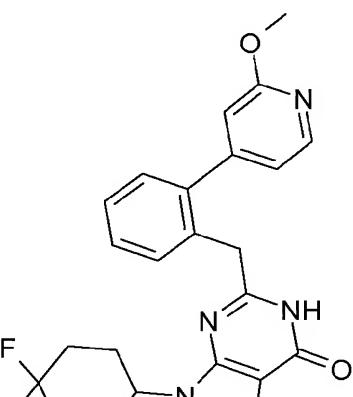
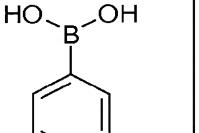
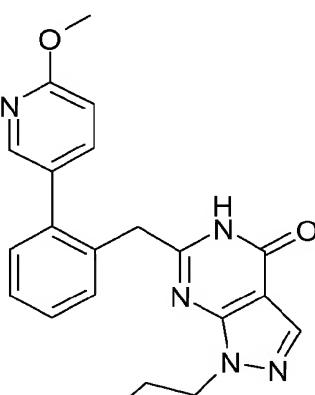
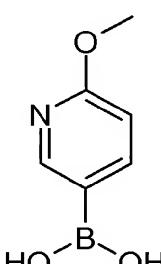
HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 1.47 min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 447 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

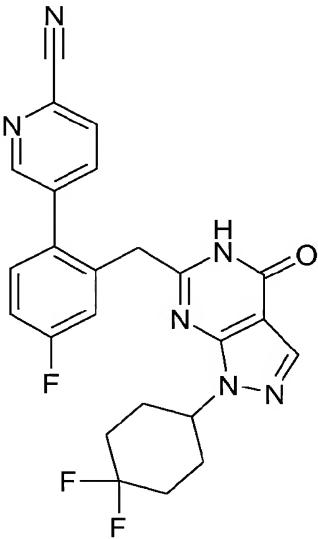
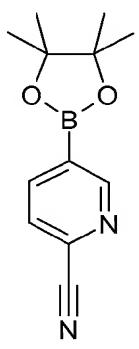
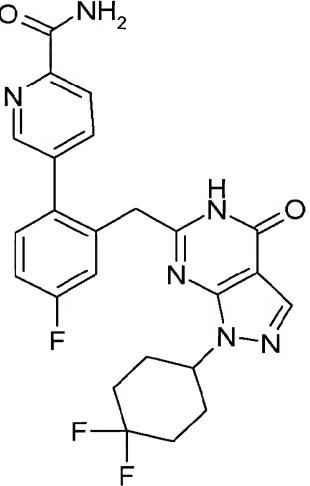
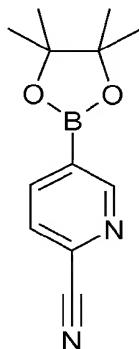
The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of examples 53/54, using the corresponding boronic acids or boronic esters and bromides as

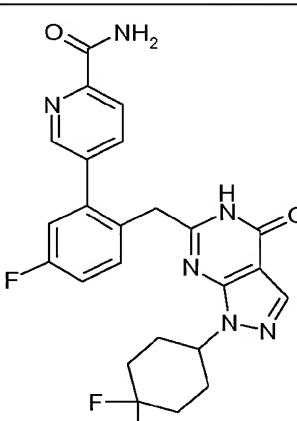
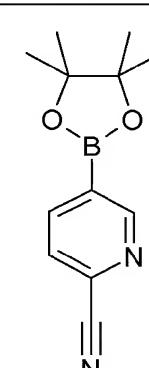
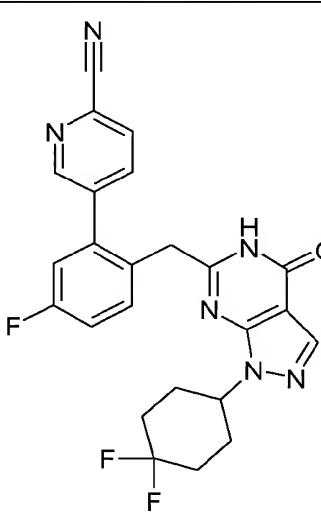
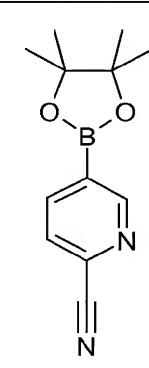
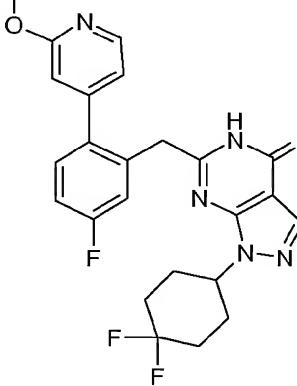
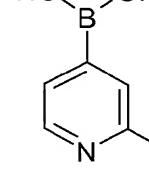
15 starting materials

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	$R_t$	MS (ESI pos, $m/z$ )

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 55		Exm. 33		1.45 min (M1)	452 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 56		Exm. 33		1.51 min (M1)	452 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 57		Exm. 45		1.51 min (M1)	465 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 58		Exm. 45		1.29 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 59		Exm. 44		1.51 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 60		Exm. 45		1.51 min (M1)	465 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 61		Exm. 45		1.37 min (M1)	483 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

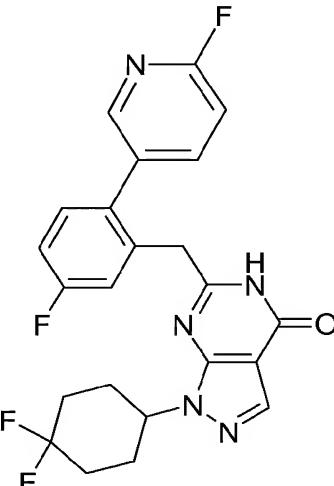
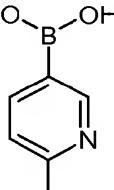
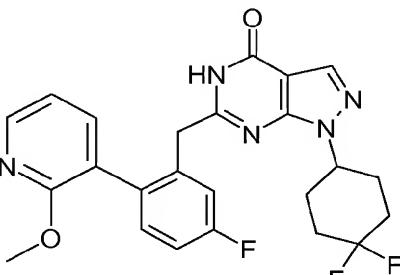
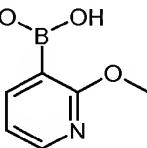
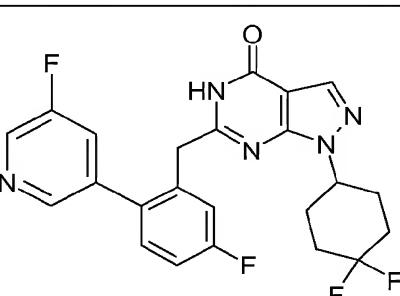
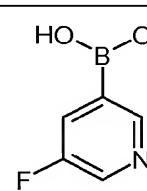
	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 62		Exm. 44		1.40 min (M1)	483 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 63		Exm. 44		1.50 min (M1)	465 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 64		Exm. 45		1.47 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

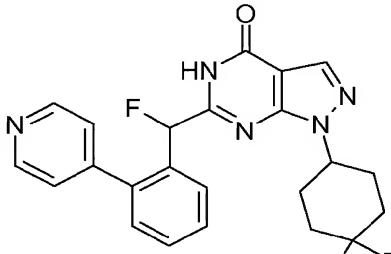
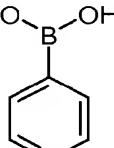
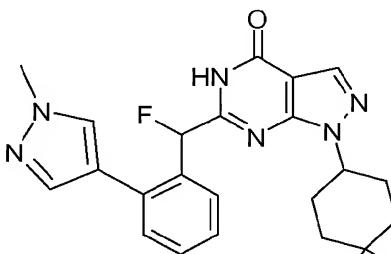
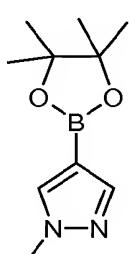
	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 65		Exm. 45		1.52 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 66		Exm. 45		1.24 min (M1)	440 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 67		Exm. 44		1.27 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

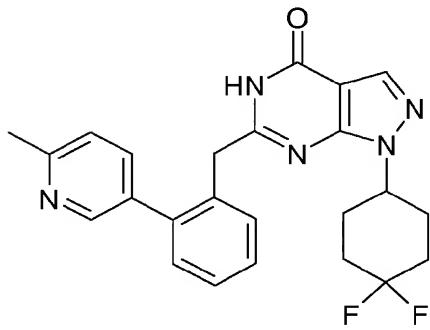
	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 68		Exm. 44		1.63 min (M1)	469 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 69		Exm. 44		1.52 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 70		Exm. 45		1.23 min (M1)	440 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 71		Exm. 44		1.21 min (M1)	440 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72		Exm. 44		1.22 min (M1)	440 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-2		Exm. 45		1.39 min (M1)	443 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 72-3		Exm. 45		1.41 min (M1)	443 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-4		Exm. 45		1.49 min (M1)	458 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-5		Exm. 45		1.62 min (M1)	469 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-6		Exm. 45		1.56 min (M1)	464 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 72-7		Exm. 45		1.51 min (M1))	458 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-8		Exm. 45		1.51 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-9		Exm. 45		1.46 min (M1)	458 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid or -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 72-10 racemic mixture		Exm. 48-2		1.23 min (M1)	440 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 72-11 racemic mixture		Exm. 48-2		1.43 min (M1)	443 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 73:

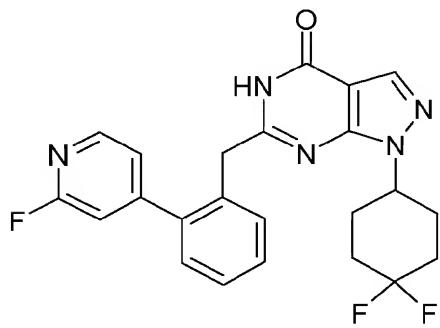
The reaction was executed under an argon-atmosphere.

5 To 100 mg (0.24 mmol) of example 33 and 90.0 mg (0.66 mmol) 6-methylpyridin-3-ylboronic acid, 3 mL dioxane and 1 mL methanol, 140  $\mu$ L (1 mmol) TEA and 15 mg (0.02 mmol) 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocenedichloropalladium(II) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 140°C for 30 min in a microwave oven. After

cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13 % TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 33.2 mg (32 %) of the product were obtained.

5 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.19$  min  
 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 436$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 74:



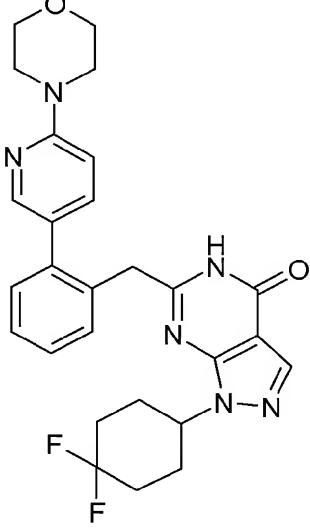
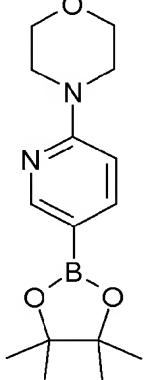
10 The reaction was executed under an argon-atmosphere. To 100 mg (0.24 mmol) of example 33 and 70.0 mg (0.50 mmol) 2-fluoropyridin-4-ylboronic acid, 3 mL dioxane and 2 mL methanol, 350  $\mu$ L (0.70 mmol) of a aqueous sodium carbonate solution (2 mol/L) and 18.0 mg (0.02 mmol) 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocenedichloropalladium(II) were added. The reaction

15 mixture was heated to 140°C for 40 min in a microwave oven. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 47.4 mg (45.7 %) of the product were obtained.

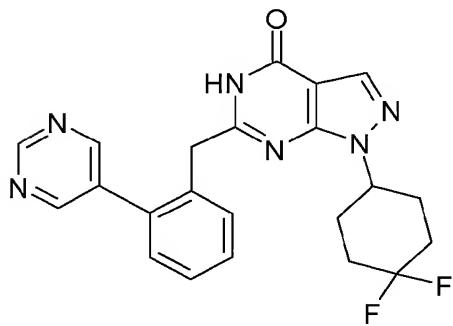
HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.49$  min

20 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 440$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 74, using the corresponding boronic acids or boronic esters and bromides as starting materials

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: boronic acid/ -ester	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 75		Exm. 33		1.24 min (M1)	507 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 76:



The reaction was executed under an argon-atmosphere.

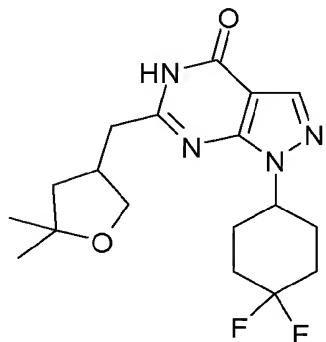
5 To 100 mg (0.24 mmol) of example 33 and 60 mg (0.48 mmol) pyrimidin-5-ylboronic acid, 4 mL dioxane and 1 mL MeOH, 300  $\mu$ L (0.60 mmol) of a aqueous sodium carbonate solution (2 mol/L) and 20.0 mg (0.02 mmol) tetrakis-(triphenylphosphin)-palladium(0) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 140°C for 30 min in a microwave oven. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was filtered  
10 and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by

preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13 % TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 46.0 mg (46.1 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 1.29 min

5 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 423 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 77



10 Enantiomer B

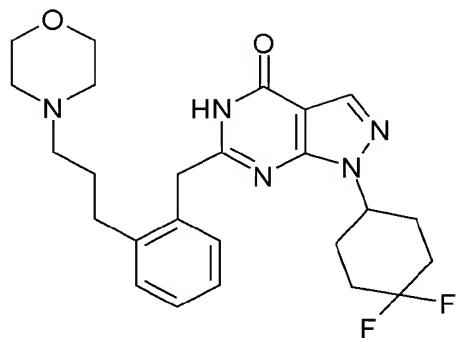
The title compound was obtained, using example 52 as starting material, by chiral HPLC separation with method Chiral 2. The product was the later eluting substance, 6.10 mg (24 %).

15 Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 3):  $R_t$  = 2.26 min

HPLC-MS (Method 1):  $R_t$  = 1.34 min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 367 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 78

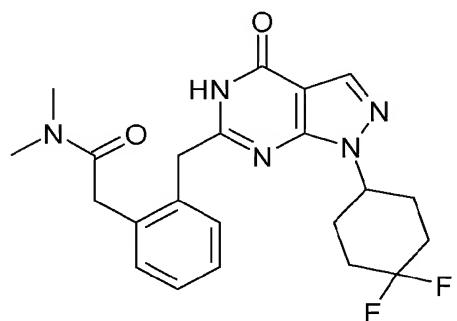


67.8 mg (0.25 mmol) of example 8A were dissolved in 8 mL pyridine, 300 mg (1.06 mmol) example 15A in 1.5 mL dichlormethane were added and the reaction mixture was stirred over night at room temperature. 6 mL methanol and one pellet of KOH were added and the solution was refluxed for 2h. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 13.9 mg (12 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_f = 1.24$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 472$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

### Example 79



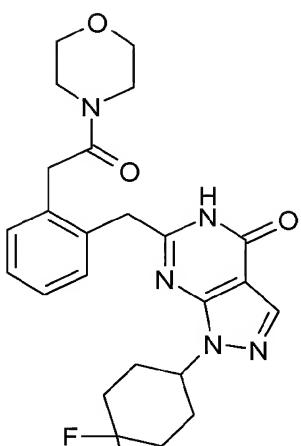
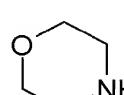
80.0 mg (0.20 mmol) of example 38 were dissolved in 3 mL DMF and 121  $\mu$ L (0.7 mmol) DIPEA and 21.1  $\mu$ L (0.40 mmol) dimethylamine (2M in THF) and 67.1 mg (0.21 mmol) TBTU were added and stirred 2h at room temperature. The reaction was made acidic with a mixture of acetonitrile, water and TFA. Then it was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 38.0 mg (45 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_f = 1.29$  min

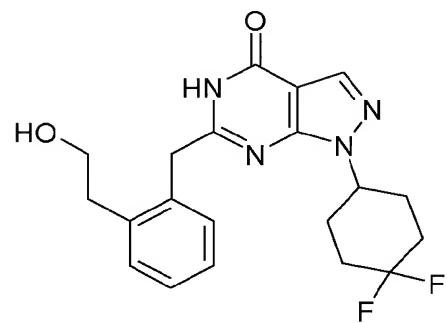
MS (ESI pos): m/z = 430 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 79, using the corresponding acids and amines as starting materials

	structure	starting material: acid	starting material: amine	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 80		Exm. 38		1.17 min (M1)	485 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 81		Exm. 38		1.44 min (M1)	470 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

	structure	starting material: acid	starting material: amine	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 82		Exm. 38		1.28 min (M1)	472 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

### Example 83

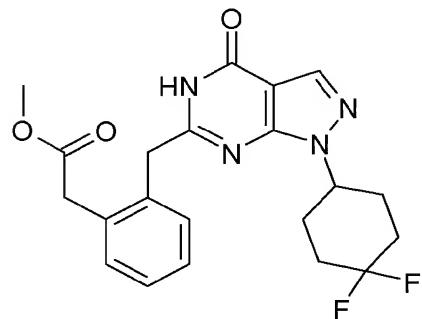


To 159  $\mu$ L (0.16 mmol) lithiumaluminiumhydride 2 M in THF were added 33.0 mg (0.08 mmol) of example 38, dissolved in 1 mL THF at 0°C and stirred for 5 min. The reaction mixture was quenched with a mixture of water and THF. After adding a few drops of 4N NaOH to the reaction, it was filtered over celite. The filtrate was washed three times with ethylacetate. The organic layer was dried and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of acetonitrile, water and TFA. Then it was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 15.0 mg (49 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.31$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 389$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 84



5

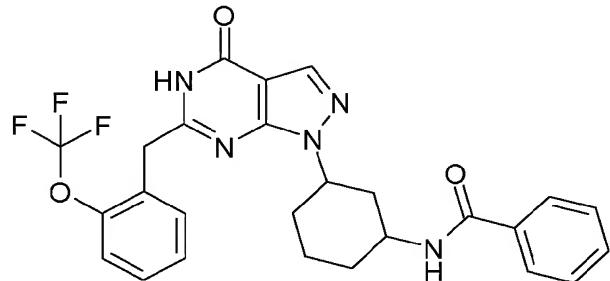
60.0 mg (0.15 mmol) of example 38 were dissolved in 5 mL of a mixture consisting of acetonitrile /methanol (9:1). Then 0.09 mL (0.18 mmol) trimethylsilyldiazomethane were added. After stirring for 15 min at room temperature the reaction was quenched with a few drops of acetic acid. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure.

10 The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 37.0 mg (59 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.46$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 417$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

15 Example 85



mixture of stereoisomers

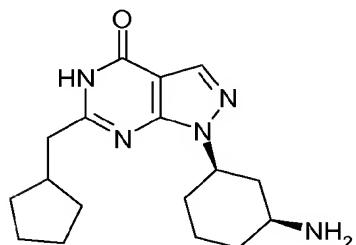
28.0 mg (0.05 mmol) of example 10A were dissolved in 2 mL THF and 2 mL dichloromethane. Then 14.9  $\mu$ L (0.11 mmol) TEA and 18.7  $\mu$ L (0.16 mmol) benzoyl chloride were added. The reaction was stirred over night at room temperature. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of acetonitrile, water and TFA and purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 7.5 mg (27 %) of the product were obtained.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 1.53 min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 512 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

10

Example 86

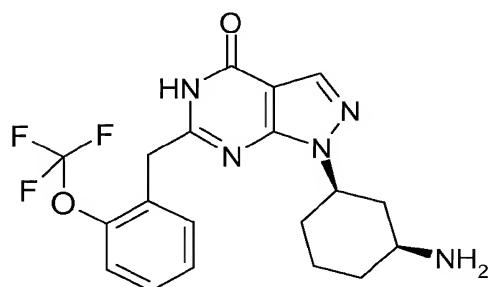


cis racemic mixture

The synthesis of example 86 is described as example 11A.

15 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t$  = 1.04 min  
MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 316 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 87



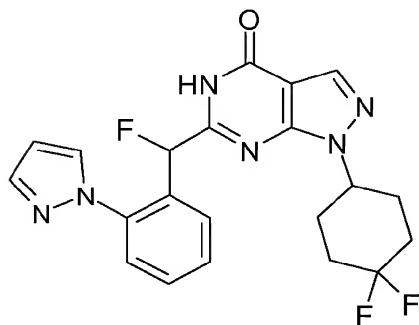
cis racemic mixture

The synthesis of example 87 is described as example 10A.

HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.16$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 408$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

5

Example 88

racemic mixture

A mixture of 148 mg (0.45 mmol) cesium carbonate, 9.32 mg (0.07 mmol)

salicylaldoxime, 100 mg (0.23 mmol) of example 48-2 and 30.9 mg (0.45 mmol)

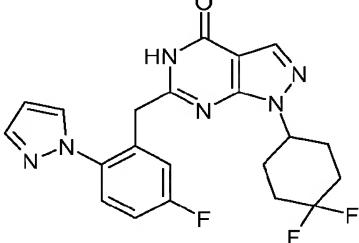
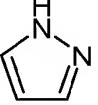
10 pyrazole in 5 mL of acetonitrile were heated for 2 h at 82°C under nitrogen using microwave heating. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and washed with water and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.13% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). 40 mg (41 %) of the product were obtained.

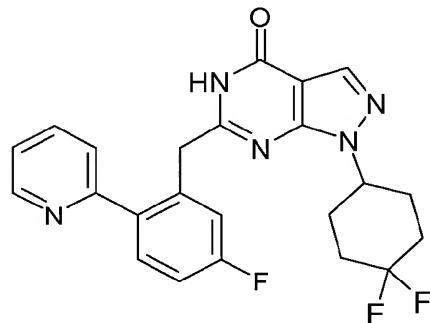
15 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.53$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 429$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

20

The following example was synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 88, using the corresponding starting materials

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: amine	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (ESI pos, m/z)
Exm. 89		Exm.45		1.54 min (M1)	429 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 90

5

## Step A:

2.00 mL (21.0 mmol) 2-bromo-pyridine and 5.07 mL (21.4 mmol) triisopropyl borate were dissolved in 40 mL THF under nitrogen. The mixture was cooled to -30°C. 13.5 mL (21.6 mmol) n-butyllithium were added dropwise. After stirring for 1.5 h the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature within 1 h. The precipitate was filtered off and dried to yield 4.1 g of solid material.

10

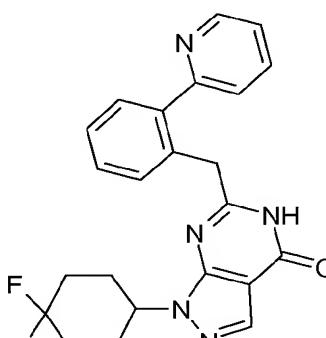
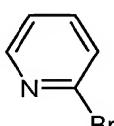
## Step B:

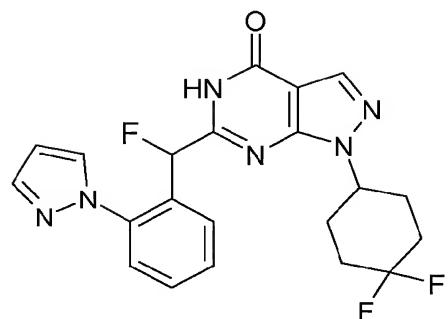
To 100 mg (0.23 mmol) of example 45 and 235 mg of the product obtained in step A, 3 mL DMF, 289 mg (1.36 mmol) of potassium phosphate and 26.2 mg (0.02 mmol) tetrakis-(triphenylphosphin)-palladium(0) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 140°C for 45 min in a microwave oven. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and washed with water and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.1% conc. ammonia, eluent B: methanol). 30 mg (30 %) of the product were obtained.

5 HPLC-MS (Method1):  $R_t = 1.39$  min  
 MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 440$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

10

The following example was synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 90, using the corresponding starting materials

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material: bromo- pyridine	$R_t$	MS (ESI pos, $m/z$ )
Exm.91		Exm.33		3.12 min (M2)	422 ( $M+H$ ) <sup>+</sup>



Enantiomer B

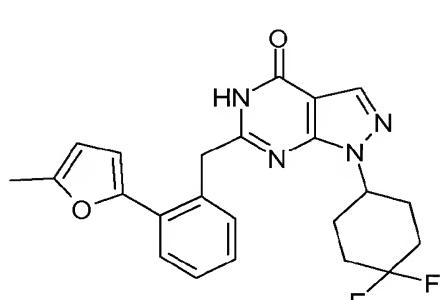
The enantiomers of 200 mg of example 88 were separated by preparative HPLC (Method Chiral 5). 72 mg (36 %) of example 92 (Enantiomer B - S-Enantiomer) were obtained as the later eluting enantiomer.

5 Chiral HPLC (Method Chiral 4):  $R_t = 4.98$  min

HPLC-MS (Method 1):  $R_t = 1.53$  min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z = 429$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 93



10

A microwave vial was charged with Example 33 (99 mg, 0.23 mmol), 5-methylfuran-2-boronic acid (116.9 mg, 3.96 mmol), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (81.15 mg, 0.07 mmol) in Dioxane (1mL) then 0.94 mL (1.87 mmol) of a 2M aqueous solution of  $Na_2CO_3$  were added. The reaction mixture is heated to 130°C for 40 min in a microwave oven. Cooling to 20°C was followed by acidification with HCl 37% until acidic pH then extraction with dichloromethane (2x 2mL). The organic layer was dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ , filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The remaining residue was purified by flash chromatography on  $SiO_2$  using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% n-hexane to 100% ethyl acetate) as eluant. The product obtained was further purified by preparative

15

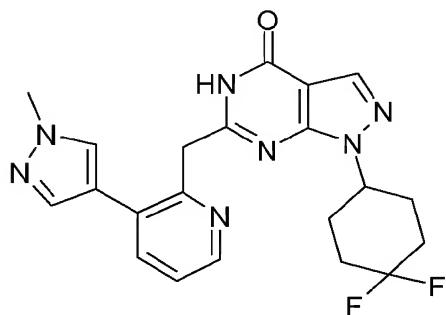
20

HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.05% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). The title compound was obtained as a solid (32.2 mg, 32%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 10.37 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 425 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

5 Example 94

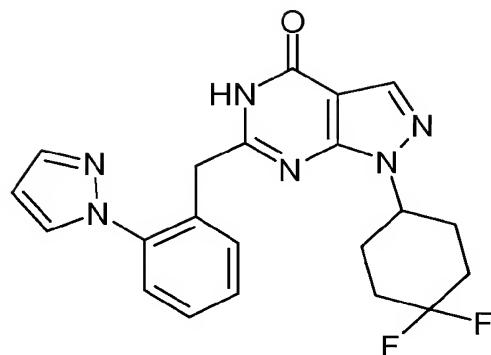


A microwave vial was charged with Example 46 (120 mg, 0.28 mmol), 1-methylfuran-4-84,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-1H-pyrazole (235.4 mg, 1.13 mmol), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II) (20 mg, 0.028 mmol) and 0.30 mL of a 10 2M solution of  $Cs_2CO_3$  then dimethoxyethane (1mL) and ethanol ( 0.5 mL) were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 130°C for 2h in a microwave oven. After cooling the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The remaining residue was purified by flash chromatography on  $SiO_2$  using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from n-hexane/ethyl acetate 1/1 to 100% ethyl acetate) as 15 eluent. The title compound was obtained as a solid (4 mg, 3%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 7.52 min

MS (APCI pos ):  $m/z$  = 426 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 95



A vial was charged under inert atmosphere with Example 33 (184 mg, 0.44 mmol), pyrazole (296 mg, 4.35 mmol), copper iodide (82.79 mg, 0.44 mmol) and cesium carbonate (424.93 mg, 1.3 mmol). Dimethylformamide (5 mL), previously degassed,

5 was then added, followed by N-N'-dimethylethylenediamine (46.28  $\mu$ l, 0.44 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 120 °C for 3 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture was filtered through a Celite pad that was rinsed with dimethylformamide. The volume was reduced under reduced pressure, saturated ammonium chloride aqueous solution was added and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase 10 was washed with brine then dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography on  $\text{SiO}_2$  using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% n-hexane to 100% ethyl acetate then ethyl acetate/methanol 95/5) as eluant. The product obtained was further purified by SPE cartridge Stratosphere "PL-THIOL MP" to 15 remove copper salts. The solid obtained was triturated with a diisopropylether/diethyl ether mixture (2:1) resulting in title compound as a solid (30 mg, 16 %).

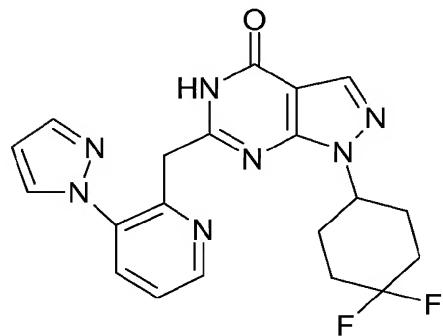
HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 9.17 min

MS (APCI pos ):  $m/z$  = 411 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

The following example was synthesized in analogy to the preparation of example 95,

20 using the corresponding starting materials

	structure	starting material: bromide	starting material:	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (m/z)
Example 95-1		Exm. 33		8.20 min (M1Eh)	426 (M+H) <sup>+</sup> ion source: APCI

Example 96

5 A Schlenk tube was charged under inert atmosphere with Example 46 (200 mg, 0.47 mmol), pyrazole (329 mg, 4.83 mmol), copper iodide ( 92.48 mg, 0.49 mmol) and cesium carbonate (473.09 mg, 1.45 mmol). Dioxane (5 mL), previously degassed, was then added, followed by N-N'-dimethylethylenediamine (51.70  $\mu$ L; 0.49 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 120 °C overnight. A solid was filtered and washed thoroughly with dioxane. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, washed with water and 10% citric

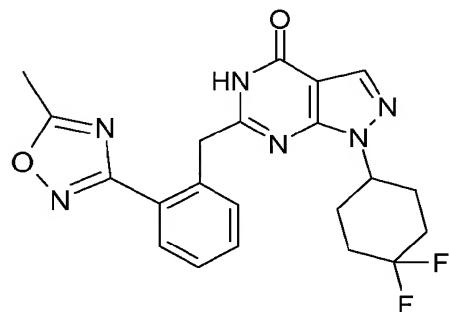
10

acid aqueous solution. The phases were separated using a PHASE SEPARATOR cartridge. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the crude product was purified by flash chromatography on  $\text{SiO}_2$  using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% to 100% ethyl acetate) as eluant. The product obtained was dissolved in dichloromethane and washed with 5%  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  aqueous solution then it was further purified by preparative TLC (eluting with Dichloromethane/Methanol 90/10). The solid obtained was triturated with diethyl ether resulting in title compound as a solid (13.4 mg, 7%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 7.93 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 412 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 97



Example 31 (260 mg, 0.70 mmol) and hydroxylamine 50% in water (0.26 mL, 4.2 mmol) were mixed together in absolute ethanol (4 mL). The reaction mixture was 15 refluxed for 11 hours. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure to obtain 260 mg (0.65 mmol) of N-Hydroxy-2-[1-(4,4-Difluoro-cyclohexyl)-4-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-6-ylmethyl]-benzamidine as solid that was used as such in the next step.

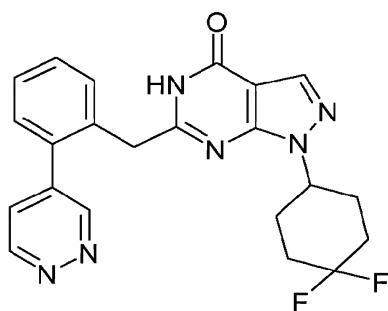
N-Hydroxy-2-[1-(4,4-Difluoro-cyclohexyl)-4-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-6-ylmethyl]-benzamidine (260 mg, 0.65 mmol) was suspended in trimethylorthoacetate (5 mL) and acetic acid (0.5 mL) was added afterwards. The mixture was heated to 100 °C for 2 hours. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The solid obtained was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.05% TFA, eluent B: 20 acetonitrile). The product obtained was further purified by preparative TLC using acetonitrile.

dichloromethane/methanol 95/5 as eluant. The title compound was obtained as a solid (25 mg, 9%).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 9.35 min

5 MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 427 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 98

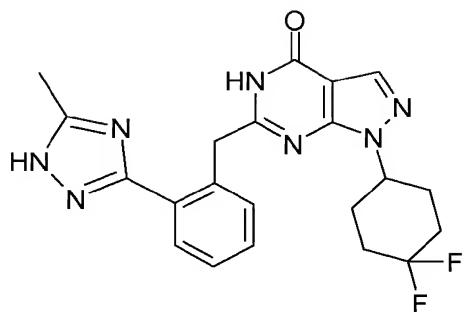


A vial was charged under inert atmosphere with Example 33 (150 mg, 0.35 mmol) and 4-(tributylstannyly)pyridazine (200 mg, 0.54 mmol) in toluene (3 mL), previously 10 degassed, followed by tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (60.95 mg, 0.052 mmol) and copper iodide (3.37mg, 0.018mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 120°C for 1h in a microwave oven. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved into 10% citric acid aqueous solution (2mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x2mL). The organic layer was dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ , 15 filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The oil obtained was purified by SPE cartridge Stratosphere "PL-THIOL MP" and afterwards by flash chromatography on  $SiO_2$  using n-hexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 100% n-hexane to 100% ethyl acetate then ethyl acetate/methanol 95/5) as 20 eluant. The product obtained was further purified by SCX cartridge. The title compound was obtained as a solid (42 mg, 28 %).

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 7.68 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 423 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 99



Example 31 (80 mg, 0.22 mmol) and hydrazine hydrate (0.64mL, 13.86 mmol) were mixed together in absolute ethanol (4 mL) and heated to reflux for 7 hours. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure to obtain 98 mg of N-Amino-2-[4-oxo-1-(tetrahydro-pyran-4-yl)-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-6-ylmethyl]-benzimidine as solid that was used as such in the next step.

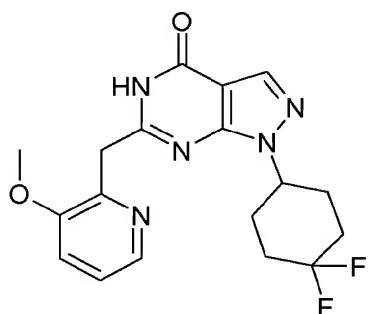
Under inert atmosphere N-Amino-2-[4-oxo-1-(tetrahydro-pyran-4-yl)-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-6-ylmethyl]-benzimidine (95 mg, 0.24 mmol) was suspended in trimethylorthoacetate (6 mL) and acetic acid was added afterwards (0.6 mL). The mixture was heated to 80 °C for 30 min then cooled to room temperature and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The solid obtained was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.05% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). The oil obtained was triturated with diethyl ether to give the title compound as a solid (21 mg, 20%).

15

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t$ : 8.35 min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z$  = 426 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 100



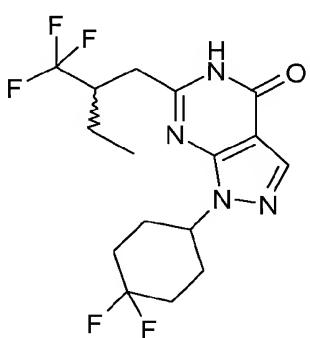
100 mg (0.41 mmol) of 8A were dissolved in absolute ethanol (2 mL), 65.51 mg (1.64 mmol) of sodium hydride (60% suspension in mineral oil) were added. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes afterwards 296.74 mg (1.64 mmol) of Example 30A were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 150°C for 1 hour in a microwave oven.

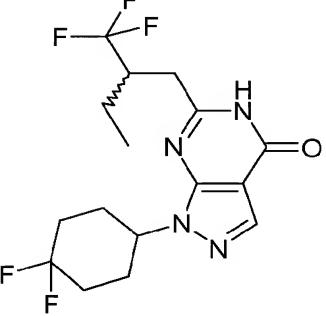
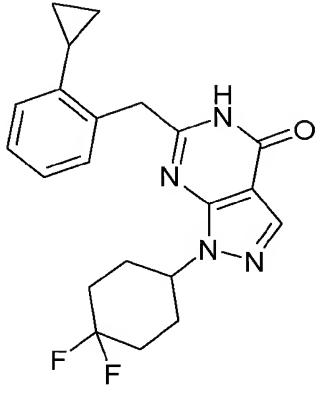
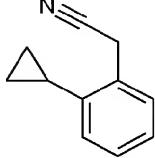
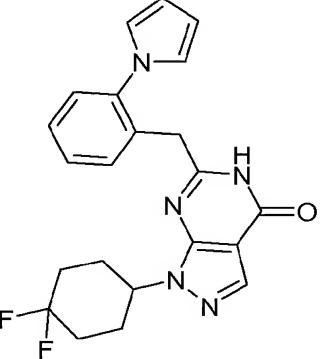
5 Cooling to 20°C was followed by evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on SiO<sub>2</sub> using dichloromethane/methanol of increasing polarity (from 100% dichloromethane to dichloromethane/methanol 96/4) as eluant. The solid obtained was triturated with diethyl ether to give the title compound as a solid (35 mg, 19%).

10 HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro): R<sub>t</sub> = 7.92 min

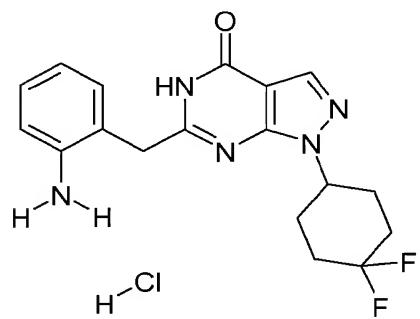
MS (APCI pos): m/z = 376 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of Example 100, using the corresponding esters or nitrile as starting materials:

	structure	pyrazolyl-carboxamide	ester or nitrile	R <sub>t</sub>	MS (APCI pos, m/z)
Exm. 101 Enantiomer A		Exm. 8A	Exm. 29A	9.68 min (M1Eh) 13.97 min (Chiral 1)	379 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Exm. 102 Enantiomer B		Exm. 8A	Exm. 29B	9.67 min (M1Eh)  13.77 min (Chiral 1)	379 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 103		Exm. 8A	  may be prepared according to WO200708 5557, page 63 example 56 a), incorporated by reference	9.95 min (M1Eh)	385 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 104		Exm. 8A	Exm. 32A	11.69 min (M 1Eh)	410 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Exm. 105		Exm. 8A	Exm. 31A	8.88 min (M1Eh)	386 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 106		Exm. 8A	Exm. 33A	10.57 min (M2M)	425 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

Example 107

40 mg of 5% Palladium on activated carbon wet and 48.12  $\mu$ L (0.58 mmol) of HCl  
 5 37% were added to a suspension of Example 40A (205 mg, 0.53 mmol) in absolute ethanol (20 mL). The mixture was hydrogenated at 15 psi for 1h. The reaction

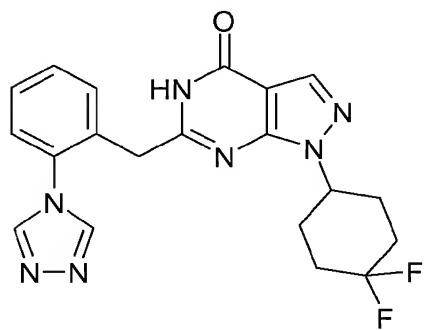
mixture was filtered on a Celite pad and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The solid obtained was triturated with dichloromethane/methanol 1:1 mixture (5 mL). The solid *hydrochloride* was collected by filtration and washed with diethyl ether to give the title compound (196 mg, 94%).

5

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t = 8.47$  min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z = 360$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 108



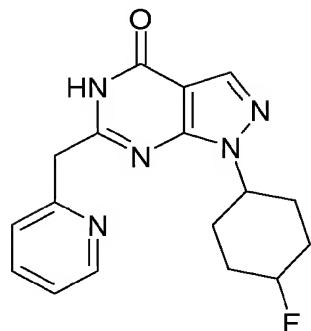
10

To a suspension of Example 107 (188 mg, 0.48 mmol) in dry Toluene (10mL), 196.2  $\mu$ L (1.41 mmol) of triethylamine and 217.8 mg of p-Toluenesulfonic acid 102.17 mg (0.48 mmol) of 1,2-bis[(dimethylamino)methylene]hydrazine dihydrochloride were added. The reaction mixture is heated to reflux for 9 days. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up into NaHCO<sub>3</sub> aqueous saturated solution and extracted with dichloromethane (2x20mL). The organic layer was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: water + 0.05% TFA, eluent B: acetonitrile). The oil obtained was further purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using cyclohexane/ethyl acetate mixture of increasing polarity (from 50% cyclohexane to 100% ethyl acetate then ethyl acetate/ethanol 90/10) as eluant. The residue obtained was triturated with diethyl ether to give the title compound as a solid (32 mg, 16%)

25

HPLC-MS (Method 1E hydro):  $R_t = 7.15$  min

MS (APCI pos):  $m/z = 412$  ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 109

55 mg (0.24 mmol) of 38A were dissolved in absolute ethanol (2 mL), 29.17 mg (0.73

5 mmol) of sodium hydride (60% suspension in mineral oil) were added. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes afterwards 151.20  $\mu$ L (0.97 mmol) of ethyl-2-pyridylacetate were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 140°C for 40 min in a microwave oven. Cooling to 20°C was followed by evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in citric acid 10% aqueous solution and 10 extracted with dichloromethane 82x 2mL). After evaporation the residue was purified by preparative HPLC (eluent A: NH<sub>4</sub>COOH 5 mM solution in water, eluent B: acetonitrile). After evaporation the solid was triturated with diethyl ether to give the title compound as a solid (40 mg, 50.3%).

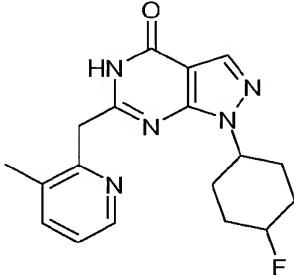
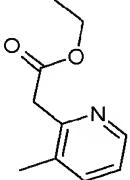
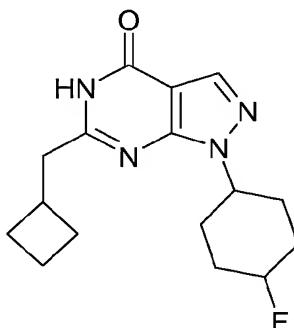
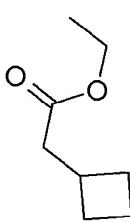
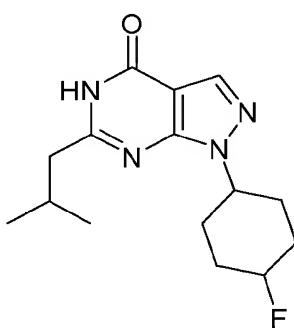
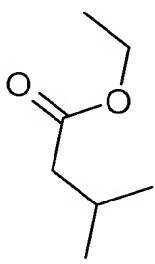
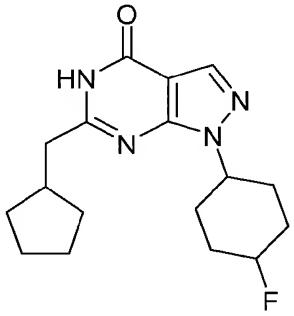
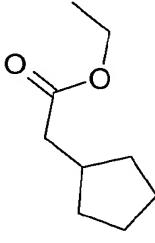
15 HPLC-MS (Method 2F):  $R_t$  = 7.31 min

MS (ESI pos):  $m/z$  = 328 ( $M+H$ )<sup>+</sup>

The following examples were synthesized in analogy to the preparation of Example 10, using the corresponding esters or nitrile as starting materials:

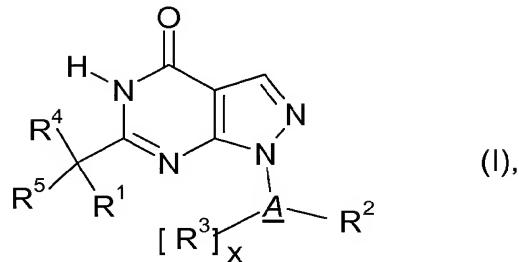
20

	structure	pyrazolyl-carboxamide	ester	$R_t$	MS (ESI-APCI, $m/z$ )

Exm. 110		Exm. 38A		8.24 min (M1E)	340 (M-H) <sup>-</sup>
Exm. 111		Exm. 38A		9.18 min (M1Eh)	305 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 112		Exm. 38A		6.69 min (M2F)	293 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
Exm. 113		Exm. 38A		7.54min (M2F)	319 (M+H) <sup>+</sup>

## Claims

1. A compound according to general formula (I)



5       wherein

**A** is selected from the group **A<sup>1</sup>** consisting of a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group or a C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, whereby the members of C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkyl group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptanyl and cyclooctanyl,  
 10 and the members of the C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>-cycloalkenyl group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl;

15   **R<sup>1</sup>** is selected from the group **R<sup>1.1</sup>** consisting of C<sub>1-8</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-8</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl- and heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  
 20

where the above mentioned members may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group preferably is only a substituent for a cycloalkyl group or a  
 25

heterocycloalkyl group, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-O-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-O- with C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O- with C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl being bound to the C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl- via one of its ring-C-atoms, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-;

15

whereby any of the C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl-, heteroaryl-groups mentioned in the latter paragraph may optionally be substituted by fluorine, chlorine, bromine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-;

20

25

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group R<sup>2-1</sup> consisting of fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, carboxy-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-, R<sup>10</sup>-S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-

30

,  $R^{10}$ -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $R^{10}$ O-CO-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $R^{10}$ -O-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $R^{10}$ -SO<sub>2</sub>-( $R^{10}$ )N-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-,

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $R^{10}$ -S-,  $R^{10}$ -S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, aryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $R^{10}$ -O-,  $R^{10}$ -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $R^{10}$ O-CO-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $R^{10}$ -O-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $R^{10}$ -SO<sub>2</sub>-( $R^{10}$ )N-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-,

or

$R^{2.1}$  and  $R^{3.1}$  together form a C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene bridge, wherein one or two CH<sub>2</sub> groups of the C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkylene bridge may be replaced independently of one another by O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, N( $R^{10}$ ) or N-C(O)-R<sup>10</sup> in such a way that in each case two O or S atoms or an O and an S atom are not joined together directly;

$R^3$  independently from any other  $R^3$  is selected from the group  $R^{3.1}$  consisting of fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $R^{10}$ -S-,  $R^{10}$ -S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,  $R^{10}$ -O-,  $R^{10}$ -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-, and  $R^{10}$ -O-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkynyl-,  $R^{10}$ -S-,  $R^{10}$ -S-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl-, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,  $R^{10}$ -

O-,  $R^{10}$ -O-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-,  $R^{10}$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-( $R^{10}$ )N-, and  $R^{10}$ -O-CO-( $R^{10}$ )N- may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -,  $(R^{10})_2N$ -C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, and  $(R^{10})_2N$ -CO-;

5

$R^{4/5}$  is selected each independently of one another from the group  $R^{4/5.1}$  consisting of H-, fluorine, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, and C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

10

or

$R^{4.1}$  and  $R^{5.1}$  together with the carbon atom to which they are bound form a 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group,

15

where the above mentioned members including the 3- to 6-membered cycloalkyl group formed by  $R^{4.1}$  and  $R^{5.1}$  may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, HO-, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O- and (C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-;

20

$R^{10}$  independently from any other  $R^{10}$  is selected from the group  $R^{10.1}$  consisting of H, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-,

25

and in case where two  $R^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring, and wherein one of the -CH<sub>2</sub>-groups of the heterocyclic ring formed may be replaced by -O-, -S-, -NH-, N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl)-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- or -N(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- and

30

where the above mentioned members  $F_3C-CH_2-$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{2-6}$ -alkenyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, aryl, aryl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-, heteroaryl, and heteroaryl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl- and in case where two  $R^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring as defined above may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine,  $HO-$ ,  $NC-$ ,  $O_2N-$ ,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,  $F_3C-CH_2-$ ,  $HO-C_{1-6}$ -alkyl,  $CH_3-O-C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl- and  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl- $O-$ ;

**x** is 0,1,2,3 or 4, preferably being 0,1,2, more preferably being 0 or 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salt forms thereof.

2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein

**A** is selected from the group **A<sup>1</sup>** being a  $C_{5-C_6}$ -cycloalkyl group the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl, preferably cyclohexyl, more preferably cyclohex-1-yl, with at least one of  $R^2$  or  $R^3$  being attached to the 4-position of said cyclohex-1-yl, more preferably cyclohex-1-yl with  $R^2$  and one  $R^3$  being attached to the 4-position of said cyclohex-1-yl and no further  $R^3$  substituent being attached to said cyclohex-1-yl.

3. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

**R<sup>1</sup>** is selected from the group **R<sup>1,2</sup>** consisting of  $C_{1-8}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-8}$ -heterocycloalkyl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, aryl, aryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-, heteroaryl and heteroaryl- $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,

where the above mentioned members may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group preferably is only a substituent for a heterocycloalkyl group,  $HO-$ ,  $NC-$ ,

O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, aryl, aryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, heteroaryl, heteroaryl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-O-, tetrahydropyran-O-, piperidinyl-O- with piperidinyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, pyrrolidinyl-O- with pyrrolidinyl being bound to O via one of its ring C-atoms, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-O-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-(R<sup>10</sup>)N-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-O-,

5 whereby any of the C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, aryl, heteroaryl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyran, piperidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrrolidinyl-groups mentioned in the latter paragraph may optionally be substituted by fluorine, chlorine, bromine, NC-, O<sub>2</sub>N-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-O-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, R<sup>10</sup>-O-, R<sup>10</sup>-CO-, R<sup>10</sup>O-CO-, and (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-. Preferably piperidinyl or pyrrolidinyl are substituted by R<sup>10</sup>-CO-.

10

15

4. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group R<sup>1,3</sup> consisting of phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl,

20 whereby these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl, HO-, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-O-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and phenyl,

25

30 whereby the pyridyl and phenyl group mentioned in the latter paragraph may optionally be substituted by fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO-, NC-, morpholinyl and benzyl-O-.

5. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

**R<sup>1</sup>** is selected from the group **R<sup>1.4</sup>** consisting of phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, ethyl, 1- and 2-propyl, 1- and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl,

5 where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, pyridyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-methyl-, N-morpholiny-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl and phenyl,

10 whereby the pyridyl, pyrazolyl and phenyl group mentioned in the latter paragraph may optionally be substituted by fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO- and NC-.

15 6. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

**R<sup>1</sup>** is selected from the group **R<sup>1.5</sup>** consisting of phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby said phenyl or 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl optionally may be substituted by C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-.

20 7. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

**R<sup>1</sup>** being aryl or heteroaryl,

with said aryl being phenyl, and said heteroaryl being selected from the group of 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, preferably phenyl and pyridyl,

whereby said aryl and each of said heteroaryl being substituted by one member of

25 the group **R<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup>** which consists of phenyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group **R<sup>1.0.1.S1</sup>** being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

and more preferred the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  consists of oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  5 being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

and whereby said aryl and said heteroaryl and/or the member of said group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  optionally may be substituted by one or more members of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  which 10 consists of fluorine, chlorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCO}-$ ,  $\text{N-morpholinyl}$ , and  $\text{NC}-$ , preferably  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  consists of fluorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$  and  $\text{NC}-$ .

8. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7, wherein

$\mathbf{R}^2$  is selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{2.3}$  consisting of fluorine,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl}-$ , aryl,  $\text{HO}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-C}_{2-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^{10}\text{-CO-}$  15  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,

where the above mentioned members  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-}$ , aryl,  $\text{HO-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-C}_{2-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}^{10}\text{-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}^{10})_2\text{N-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$  and  $\mathbf{R}^{10}\text{-O-CO-(R}^{10})\text{N-}$  may optionally be substituted independently of 20 one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine,  $\text{NC-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{-alkyl-}$ , and  $\text{F}_3\text{C-}$ .

9. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7, wherein

$\mathbf{R}^2$  is selected from the group  $\mathbf{R}^{2.5}$  consisting of fluorine.

25

10. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9, wherein

5       $R^3$     is selected from the group  $R^{3.2}$  consisting of fluorine,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,  $F_3C-CH_2-$ , methyl, ethyl, methoxy-, pyridyl, pyridylmethyl-, phenyl and benzyl, where the above mentioned members  $F_3C-CH_2-$ , methyl, ethyl, methoxy-, pyridyl, pyridylmethyl-, phenyl and benzyl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one fluorine.

11. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9, wherein

10       $R^3$     is selected from the group  $R^{3.3}$  consisting of fluorine,  $F_3C-$ ,  $HF_2C-$ ,  $FH_2C-$ ,  $F_3C-CH_2-$  and methyl.

12. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9, wherein

15       $R^3$     is selected from the group  $R^{3.4}$  consisting of fluorine.

13. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12, wherein

20       $R^{4/5}$     is selected each independently of one another from the group  $R^{4/5.2}$  consisting of H- and fluorine, preferably  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  both being H.

14. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12 or 13, wherein

25       $R^{10}$     is selected each independently of one another from the group  $R^{10.2}$  consisting of H-,  $C_{1-6}$ -alkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl-,  $C_{3-7}$ -cycloalkyl- $C_{1-3}$ -alkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl,

and in case where two  $R^{10}$  groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring, and wherein one of the  $-CH_2-$ groups of the heterocyclic

ring formed may be replaced by -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl)-, -N(C<sub>3-6</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- or -N(C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl)- and

where the above mentioned members C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-, aryl and heteroaryl and in case where two R<sup>10</sup> groups both are bound to the same nitrogen atom they may together with said nitrogen atom form a 3 to 7 membered heterocycloalkyl ring as defined above may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine, NC-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, HF<sub>2</sub>C-, FH<sub>2</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-CH<sub>2</sub>-, CH<sub>3</sub>-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-,

preferably

R<sup>10</sup> is selected each independently of one another from the group R<sup>10.5</sup> consisting of H-, methyl, ethyl and tert.-butyl,

where the above mentioned members methyl, ethyl and tert.-butyl may optionally be substituted independently of one another by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine.

15. A compound according to claim 1,

20 with

A being a substituent selected from the group of A<sup>4</sup> being a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>-cycloalkyl group the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl;

R<sup>1</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>1.3</sup> being phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl,

25 cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl,

where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group R<sup>1.3.S1</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuran and

tetrahydropyranyl, HO-, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-O-, C<sub>3-7</sub>-cycloalkyl-C<sub>1-3</sub>-alkyl-O-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-, C<sub>3-8</sub>-heterocycloalkyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, HO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, and phenyl,

5 whereby the pyridyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group R<sup>1.3.S1</sup> may optionally be substituted by a member of the group R<sup>1.3.S2</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, H<sub>3</sub>C-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, CH<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-O-, H<sub>2</sub>NCO-, NC-, morpholinyl and benzyl-O-;

R<sup>2</sup> being a substituent of the group of R<sup>2.5</sup> being fluorine;

R<sup>3</sup> independently of any other R<sup>3</sup> being a substituent of the group of R<sup>3.4</sup> being

10 fluorine;

R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>4/5.2</sup> being H and fluorine, preferably R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> both being H;

R<sup>10</sup> independently of any other R<sup>10</sup> being a substituent of the group of R<sup>10.4</sup> being H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, phenyl and pyridyl, preferably H-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-;

15 x being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

16. A compound according to claim 15,

with

20 R<sup>1</sup> being a substituent selected from the group of R<sup>1.4</sup> being phenyl, 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, ethyl, 1- and 2-propyl, 1- and 2-butyl, 1-, 2- and 3-pentyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl,

where these groups may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group R<sup>1.4.S1</sup> which consists of fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine,

25 oxo, whereby this oxo group is only a substituent for tetrahydrofuranyl and tetrahydropyranyl, NC-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-O-, C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, F<sub>3</sub>C-, pyridyl, (R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>2</sub>N-CO-methyl-, N-morpholinyl-C<sub>1-6</sub>-alkyl-, pyrazolyl and phenyl,

whereby the pyridyl, pyrazolyl and phenyl group of the aforementioned group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.4.\mathbf{S}1}$  may optionally be substituted by a member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.4.\mathbf{S}2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCO}-$  and  $\text{NC}-$ ;

$\mathbf{x}$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

5 and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

17. A compound according to claim 1,

with

$\mathbf{A}$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{A}^1$  being a  $\text{C}_3\text{-}\text{C}_8\text{-cycloalkyl}$  group or 10 a  $\text{C}_4\text{-}\text{C}_8\text{-cycloalkenyl}$  group, whereby the members of  $\text{C}_3\text{-}\text{C}_8\text{-cycloalkyl}$  group being selected from the group of cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl,

and the members of the  $\text{C}_4\text{-}\text{C}_8\text{-cycloalkenyl}$  group, being selected from cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, cyclooctenyl, cyclopentadienyl, 15 cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptadienyl, cyclooctadienyl, cycloheptatrienyl, cyclooctatrienyl, cyclooctatetraenyl;

$\mathbf{R}^1$  being defined as outlined for  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1}$ , namely  $\mathbf{R}^1$  being aryl or heteroaryl,

with said aryl being phenyl, and said heteroaryl being selected from the group of 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, preferably phenyl and pyridyl,

20 whereby said aryl and each of said heteroaryl being substituted by one member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.\mathbf{S}1}$  which consists of phenyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.\mathbf{S}1}$  being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

25 and more preferred the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.\mathbf{S}1}$  consists of oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, furanyl, pyrrolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, and 2-, 3- and 4-pyridyl, whereby preferably said aryl or heteroaryl is ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl and the member of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.\mathbf{S}1}$  being attached to said ar-1-yl or heteroar-1-yl at the 2-position thereof,

and whereby said aryl and said heteroaryl and/or the member of said group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S1}$  optionally may be substituted by one or more members of the group  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  which consists of fluorine, chlorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCO}-$ , N-morpholinyl, and  $\text{NC}-$ , preferably  $\mathbf{R}^{1.0.1.S2}$  consists of fluorine,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$  and  $\text{NC}-$ ;

5  $\mathbf{R}^2$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{R}^{2.4}$  being fluorine, methyl,  $\text{HO}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ , phenyl,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-CO-(H)N-}$  and phenyl-CO-(H)N-,

where the above mentioned members methyl,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-$ , phenyl,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-O-CO-(H)N-}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{-alkyl-CO-(H)N-}$ , phenyl-CO-(H)N- may optionally be substituted

10 independently of one another by one or more fluorine;

$\mathbf{R}^3$  independently of any other  $\mathbf{R}^3$  being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{R}^{3.3}$  being fluorine,  $\text{F}_3\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{HF}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{FH}_2\text{C}-$ ,  $\text{F}_3\text{C-CH}_2-$  and methyl;

$\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  being independently of one another a substituent selected from the group

15 of  $\mathbf{R}^{4/5.2}$  being H and fluorine, preferably  $\mathbf{R}^4$  and  $\mathbf{R}^5$  both being H;

$\mathbf{x}$  being 0,1,2,3,4, preferably being 0,1 or 2, more preferably 0 or 1 or only 1;

and salts, preferably pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

18. A compound according to claim 17,

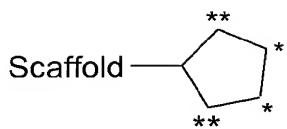
20 with

A being a substituent selected from the group of  $\mathbf{A}^4$  being a  $\text{C}_5\text{-C}_6\text{-cycloalkyl}$  group the members of which being selected from the group of cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

19. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16,

25 17 or 18, with the provision that

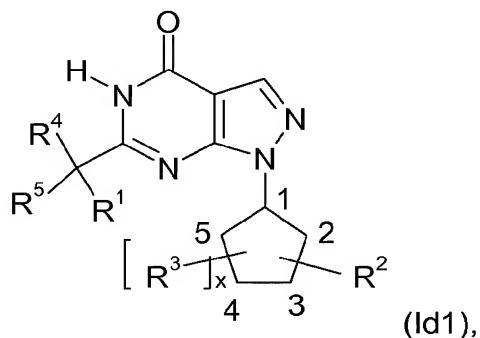
in case A is cyclopentyl,  $\mathbf{R}^2$  and  $\mathbf{R}^3$  are not bound to those carbon atoms of  $\mathbf{A}$



indicated by \* via a  $-\text{CH}_2$ -group of said substituents  $\text{R}^2$  or  $\text{R}^3$  if at one or both of the positions indicated by \*\* are  $-\text{CH}_2$ -groups.

5

20. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18, provided that the compound is not a compound according to the general formula (Id1)



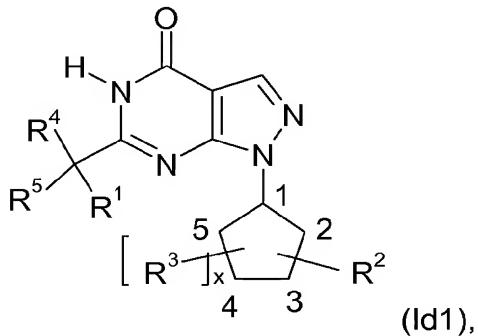
10

in which

- the figures 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 at the cyclopentylring label the corresponding ring C atom;
- if neither  $\text{R}^2$  nor  $\text{R}^3$  is bound at the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 2; then none of  $\text{R}^2$  or  $\text{R}^3$  are bound to the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 3 by a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group that is integral part of said  $\text{R}^2$  or  $\text{R}^3$  or
- if neither  $\text{R}^2$  nor  $\text{R}^3$  is bound at the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 5; then none of  $\text{R}^2$  or  $\text{R}^3$  are bound to the cyclopentylring C atom labelled by the figure 4 by a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group that is integral part of said  $\text{R}^2$  or  $\text{R}^3$
- the remaining definitions for  $\text{R}^1$ ,  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^3$ ,  $\text{R}^4$ ,  $\text{R}^5$  and  $x$  are the same as defined in the corresponding claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18.

25

21. A compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18, provided that the compound is not a compound according to the general formula (Id1)



in which

- the figures 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 at the cyclopentylring label the corresponding ring C atom;
- one or both of the cyclopentylring C atoms labelled by the figure 2 and 5 are unsubstituted (i.e. CH<sub>2</sub>-groups);
- none of R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup> are bound to the cyclopentylring C atoms labelled by the figure 3 and 4 by a CH<sub>2</sub>-group that is integral part of said R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup>; and
- the remaining definitions for R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and x are the same as defined in the corresponding claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18.

10

15

22. Use of a compound according to any of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 for the manufacture of medicament for the treatment, amelioration or prevention of cognitive impairment being related to perception, concentration, cognition, learning or memory, in particular for the treatment, amelioration or prevention of cognitive impairment being related to age-associated learning and memory impairments, age-associated memory losses, vascular dementia, craniocerebral trauma, stroke, dementia occurring after strokes (post stroke dementia), post-traumatic dementia, general concentration impairments, concentration impairments in children with learning and memory problems, Alzheimer's disease, Lewy body dementia, dementia with degeneration of the frontal

25

lobes, including Pick's syndrome, Parkinson's disease, progressive nuclear palsy, dementia with corticobasal degeneration, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington's disease, multiple sclerosis, thalamic degeneration, Creutzfeld-Jacob dementia, HIV dementia, schizophrenia with dementia or Korsakoff's psychosis.

5

23. Use of a compound according to any of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 for the manufacture of medicament for the treatment of sleep disorders, bipolar disorder, metabolic syndrome, obesity, diabetes mellitus, hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, impaired glucose tolerance, or a disease of the testes, brain, small intestine, skeletal muscle, heart, lung, thymus or spleen.

10

24. Use of a compound according to any of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 for the manufacture of medicament for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

15

25. Use of a compound according to any of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a disease that is accessible by the inhibition of PDE9.

20

26. Use of a compound according to any of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a CNS disease, more preferably as a medicament for the treatment of a CNS disease, the treatment of which is accessible by the inhibition of PDE9.

25

27. Pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 and a pharmaceutical carrier.

28. Method for the treatment of a condition as defined in any of claims 22 to 26 in a patient comprising administering to said patient a therapeutically active amount of a compound according to any of claims 1 to 21.

5

29. Combination of a compound according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 with another active agent for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No PCT/EP2009/061455
---

<b>A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b>
INV. C07D487/04 A61K31/519 A61P25/00 A61P3/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

<b>B. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>
---------------------------

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
C07D A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EP0-Internal, CHEM ABS Data

<b>C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b>
---

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 2004/026876 A (BAYER HEALTHCARE AG [DE]; HENDRIX MARTIN [DE]; BOESS FRANK-GERHARD [DE]) 1 April 2004 (2004-04-01) cited in the application claims 1-13; examples 1-23 -----	1-29
X	WO 2004/018474 A (BAYER HEALTHCARE AG [DE]; HENDRIX MARTIN [DE]; BOESS FRANK-GERHARD [DE]) 4 March 2004 (2004-03-04) cited in the application page 28 – page 41; claims 1-12 -----	1-29
X	WO 2004/096811 A (PFIZER PROD INC [US]; BELL ANDREW SIMON [GB]; DENINNO MICHAEL PAUL [US]) 11 November 2004 (2004-11-11) claims 1-8; examples 4,14,15,17,43 -----	1-21, 23

Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

See patent family annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
11 February 2010	19/02/2010

Name and mailing address of the ISA/ European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL – 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016
--

Authorized officer

Rufet, Jacques

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

## Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/EP2009/061455

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)			Publication date
WO 2004026876	A 01-04-2004	AU 2003251706 A1	CA 2496308 A1	DE 10238724 A1	08-04-2004
				EP 1534713 A1	01-06-2005
			ES 2256797 T3		16-07-2006
		JP 2006503051 T			26-01-2006
		US 2006111372 A1			25-05-2006
<hr/>					
WO 2004018474	A 04-03-2004	AU 2003258601 A1	CA 2496194 A1	DE 10238723 A1	11-03-2004
				EP 1534711 A1	01-06-2005
			ES 2263057 T3		01-12-2006
		JP 2006507242 T			02-03-2006
		US 2006106035 A1			18-05-2006
<hr/>					
WO 2004096811	A 11-11-2004	US 2004220186 A1			04-11-2004
<hr/>					